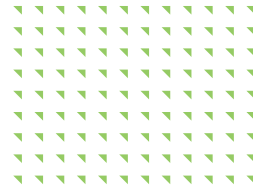




# C4 CITROËN SPACETOURER GRAND C4 SPACETOURER



HANDBOOK

INSPIRED BY YOU

# Access to the Handbook



From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyCitroën** application for smartphone.

Then select:

- the vehicle,
- the print edition appropriate for the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.



The **Handbook** is available on the CITROËN website, in the "MyCitroën" section or at the following address:  
<http://service.citroen.com/ddb/>

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the print edition of your handbook appropriate for the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of your vehicle.



Access to the **Handbook**.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

## Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Citroën C4 SpaceTourer.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document, you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

### Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment/button described with a black zone



## Key

This key will enable you to identify the special features of your vehicle:



C4 SpaceTourer



Grand C4 SpaceTourer



Grand C4 SpaceTourer  
5-seat



Grand C4 SpaceTourer  
7-seat

<b>Overview</b>		<b>Access</b>		<b>Lighting and visibility</b>	
Instruments and controls	4	Electronic key – Remote control	40	Lighting control stalk	90
		Keyless Entry and Starting	41	Automatic headlamp dipping	94
		Central locking	43	Headlamp adjustment	96
		Back-up procedures	45	Cornering lighting	96
<b>Eco-driving</b>		Doors	47	Directional lighting	97
		Boot	47	Wiper control stalk	98
		Motorised tailgate	48	Automatic wiping	99
		Hands-free tailgate	51	Screen wash	100
		Alarm	53		
		Electric windows	55		
<b>Instruments</b>		<b>Ease of use and comfort</b>		<b>Safety</b>	
Instrument panels	8	Front seats	57	General safety recommendations	101
Warning and indicator lamps	11	Rear seats	62	Hazard warning lamps	101
Indicators	26	Seat modular design and configuration	67	Horn	102
Touch screen	31	Steering wheel adjustment	68	Emergency or assistance call	102
Trip computer	36	Mirrors	68	Electronic stability control (ESC)	103
Setting the date and time	39	Ventilation	70	Seat belts	106
		Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning	71	Airbags	109
		Heating	72	Child seats	112
		Dual-zone temperature-regulated manual air conditioning	72	Deactivating the front passenger airbag	113
		Dual-zone automatic air conditioning	74	ISOFIX mountings/child seats	119
		Recirculation of interior air	76	Child lock	124
		Front demist – defrost	77		
		Rear screen demist – defrost	77		
		Fragrance diffuser	77		
		Front fittings	79		
		Rear fittings	84		
		Boot fittings	85		
		Courtesy lamps	87		
		Interior ambient lighting	88		
		Footwell lighting	88		
		Panoramic glass sunroof	89		

679

## Audio and telematics

1

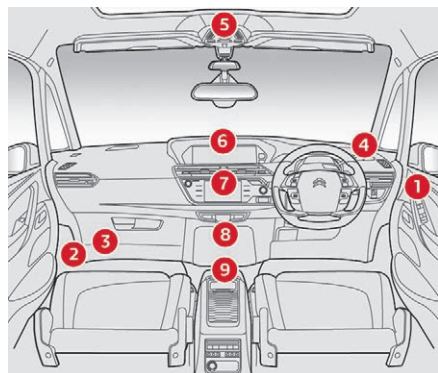
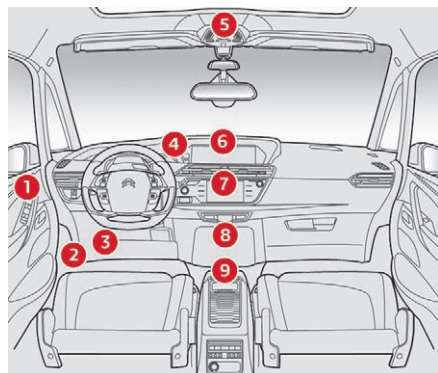
## 8

In the event of a breakdown



[bit.ly/helpPSA](http://bit.ly/helpPSA)

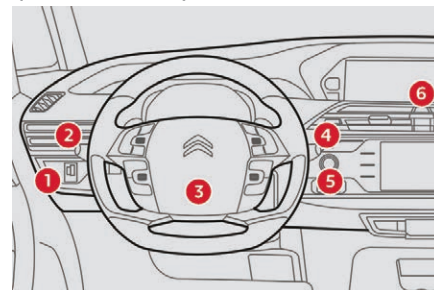
## Instruments and controls

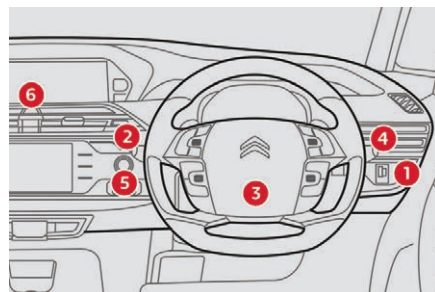


<b>1</b>	Door mirrors Electric windows, deactivating
<b>2</b>	Bonnet release
<b>3</b>	Dashboard fuses
<b>4</b>	Automatic gearbox
<b>5</b>	Courtesy lamps Rear view mirror Child-monitoring mirror Panoramic glass sunroof Emergency or assistance call
<b>6</b>	Instrument panels Gear efficiency indicator Lighting dimmer Warning and indicator lamps Indicators - service indicator - engine oil level indicator - AdBlue® fluid range indicator

<b>7</b>	Touch screen Equipment configuration Date and time adjustment Ventilation Heating Dual-zone manual air conditioning Dual-zone automatic air conditioning Demisting/Defrosting
<b>8</b>	Electric parking brake
<b>9</b>	5/6-speed manual gearbox

## Instruments and controls (continued)





**1**  
Headlamp adjustment

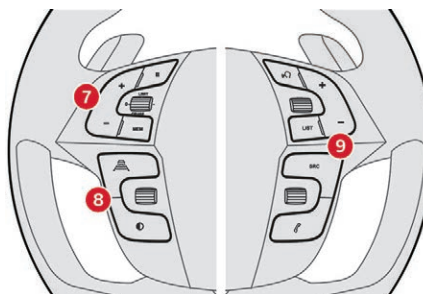
**2**  
Lighting control stalk  
Direction indicators  
Choice of instrument panel display  
mode (depending on version)

**3**  
Steering wheel adjustment  
Horn

**4**  
Wiper and screenwash control stalk  
Trip computer

**5**  
START/STOP button

**6**  
Hazard warning lamps



**7**  
Memorising speeds  
Speed Limit recognition and  
recommendation  
Speed limiter  
Cruise control  
Adaptive cruise control  
Adaptive cruise control with Stop function

**8**  
Inter-vehicle distance  
Black panel  
Choice of instrument panel display  
mode (depending on version)

**9**  
Audio and telematic system controls

## Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. When accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, give preference to automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear efficiency indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

For vehicles fitted with an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

### Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

### Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.

Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind and window blinds, etc.).

Switch off the air conditioning, unless it has automatic regulation, as soon as the desired temperature is attained.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls when not required, if they are not automatically controlled.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and front foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.

Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

### Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.  
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

### **Observe the recommendations on maintenance**

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions back in line with the regulations.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3<sup>rd</sup> cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

## Digital monochrome instrument panel

### Dials and display screens



1. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm), graduation depends on the engine (petrol or Diesel).
2. Gear efficiency indicator, selector position and the gear with an automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
5. Fuel gauge.
6. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).  
These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
7. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
8. Reminder of heating and air conditioning settings.

### Control buttons

- A. Instrument panel and touch screen lighting dimmer buttons.
- B. Reminder of the service information.  
Resetting of the selected function (service indicator or trip distance recorder).  
Reminder of the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.  
Alert log (current alerts).

## 12-inch HD colour instrument panel

This instrument panel can be customised. Depending on the selected display mode, some information may be hidden.

### Dials and display screens

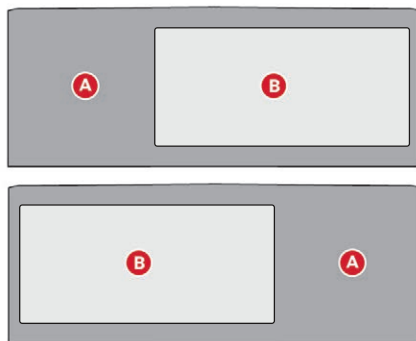


1. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm), ("Dials" mode).
2. Gear efficiency indicator, selector position and the gear with an automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
5. Fuel gauge.
6. Total distance recorder (miles or km).
7. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).
8. Reminder of current media or telephone information.
9. Reminder of trip computer information.
10. Exterior temperature (blue warning lamp comes on if there is a risk of ice).

### Control button

- A. Reminder of the service information.  
Reminder of the remaining range with the SCR system and the AdBlue®.  
Resetting of the selected function (service indicator or trip distance recorder).

## Display areas



Whatever the display mode or coloured ambience selected, the instrument panel includes:

- a fixed display area **A** with:
  - the speedometer,
  - the warning and indicator lamps,
  - the fuel gauge,
  - the various information reminders and warning messages,
- a configurable display area **B**.

Most warning and indicator lamps do not have a fixed position.

The warning and indicator lamps are displayed from right to left in order of priority.

For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and for deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

## Customisation of the 12-inch colour instrument panel

You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel, by choosing:

- a coloured ambience,
- a display mode.

**!** As a safety measure, these adjustments should be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

### Choice of language

It depends on the configuration of the touch screen.

Certain languages are not available for this instrument panel, English is selected by default.

### Choice of coloured ambience

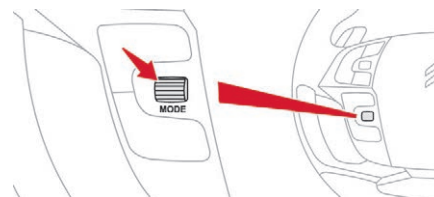
Perform changes when the vehicle is stationary:



- ☞ Press this button in the **"Settings"** menu of the touch screen.

The system restarts to take the modifications on the touch screen and instrument panel into account.

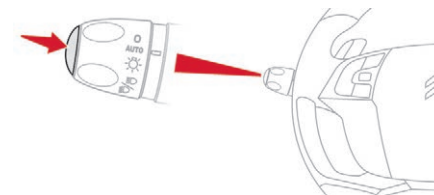
## Choice of display mode



Each mode corresponds to the type of information displayed in the configuration zone.

- ☞ Turn the knob located to the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the different modes on the right hand-side of the instrument panel,
- ☞ once the desired display mode appears, press on the knob to validate.

or



- ☞ Press the end of the lighting control stalk to display and scroll through the different modes on the right hand-side of the instrument panel,

## Instruments

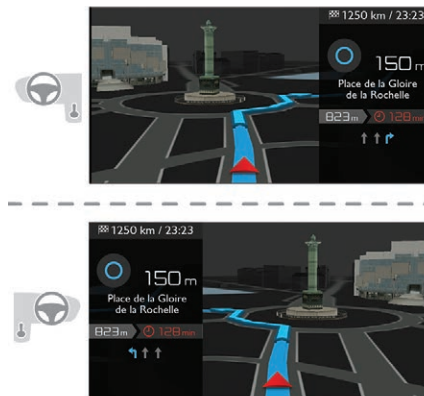
- once the selected display mode appears, it is automatically applied after a few moments with no action on the control stalk.



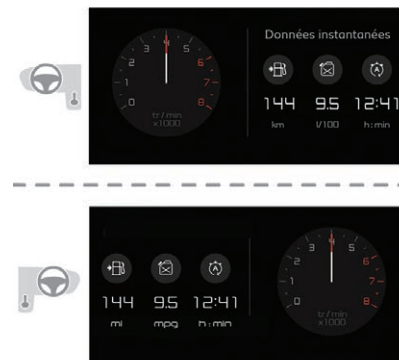
- "Dials": permanent display of the trip computer and the rev counter.



- "Driving": display of the rev counter and driving information (inter-vehicle time, etc.)



- "Navigation": display of current navigation information (map and instructions).
- "Minimal": no information displayed.



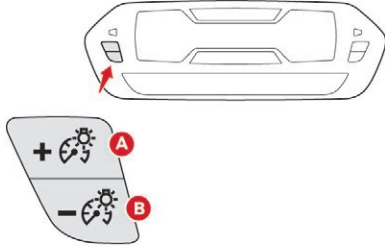
- "Personal": choice of information to be displayed in each of the 2 display zones (1/3 central and 1/3 right) among:
  - trip computer,
  - media,
  - navigation,
  - driving aids,
  - rev counter,
  - engine coolant temperature gauge,
  - no information (blank).

## Lighting dimmer

Allows manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and touch screen according to the exterior brightness.

Only works when the vehicle lamps are on, except daytime running lamps.

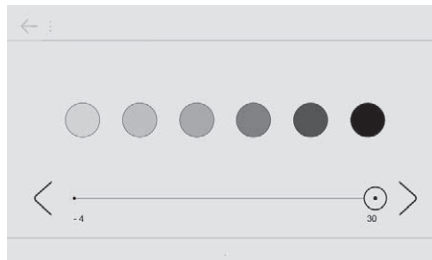
## Two buttons



With the exterior lighting on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the instruments and controls and the ambience of the vehicle or button **B** to reduce it.

As soon as the lighting reaches the required level of brightness, release the button.

## Touch screen



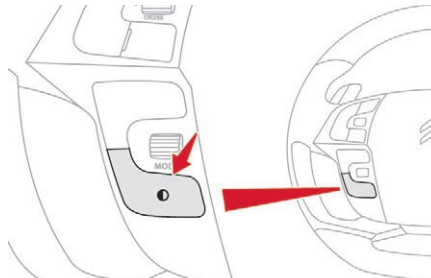
- ☞ In the **Settings** menu, select "**Brightness**".
- ☞ Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.

## Black panel (comfortable night driving display)

When driving at night, this function allows certain instrument panel displays to be switched off so as to reduce visual fatigue for the driver.

The essential driving information, such as the vehicle speed, warning and indicator lamps, the cruise control or speed limiter, remains displayed in the instrument panel.

## Using the steering mounted control



- ☞ With the exterior lighting on, press this button to activate the black panel.
- ☞ Press the button once again to deactivate it.

## Black panel (touch screen)

- ☞ In the **Settings** menu, select "**Dark**". The screen goes off.
- ☞ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to switch it on again.

## Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

## Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp can be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

## When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

## Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

## Where a warning lamp remains lit





The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.








**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.





**(2):** Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**(3):** Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.





## List of warning and indicator lamps



Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Red warning/indicator lamps				
	STOP	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Engine oil pressure	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	Brakes	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>Electric parking brake</b>	Fixed.	
		Flashing. The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	Carry out (1): park on flat level ground (horizontally). With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. With an automatic gearbox, select mode <b>P</b> . Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).
 +  OFF +  ! +  SERVICE	<b>Operating fault (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".  The parking brake is not operating at maximum efficiency and cannot ensure parking the vehicle in complete safety in all situations.	Make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, with <b>P</b> selected, place the chocks supplied against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).
	<b>Maximum coolant temperature</b>	Fixed.	Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up to the required level if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
	<b>Battery charge</b>	Fixed.	Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Door open*	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access. An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).	A door, the boot, the tailgate or the tailgate screen is still open (depending on version).	Close the access.
	Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened	Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	
Orange warning/indicator lamps				
	Operating fault (with electric parking brake)	Fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Carry out (3) quickly.
 + SERVICE		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.	If manual application and release are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. Carry out (2).

\* Only with digital monochrome instrument panel.



Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>Operating fault (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".  The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.	When stationary, to immobilise your vehicle: ☞ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ If you have a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select <b>P</b> , then put the supplied chocks against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).
	<b>Deactivation of the automatic functions (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed.  The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated. In the event of a fault, illumination of this warning lamp is accompanied by a message.	Carry out (3) if automatic application/release is no longer possible. The brake can be applied or released manually.
	<b>Automatic application (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".  The automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually.	Use the electric parking brake control lever. If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.
	<b>Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)</b>	Fixed.  The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at reduced speed, then carry out (3).


Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
<b>SERVICE</b> 	Service	Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more minor faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	One or more major faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the message 'Parking brake fault'.	Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.	Use manual release.
<b>SERVICE</b> 		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only with BlueHDi Diesel versions. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.


**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.**

**(2):** Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**(3):** Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AdBlue® 	AdBlue® (access via the boot)	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or carry out (3).
AdBlue®  + SERVICE		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You <b>must</b> top up the AdBlue® to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> , or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.





Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>AdBlue®</b> <b>(access via the fuel filler flap)</b>	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).  Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).  Top up the AdBlue® <b>as soon as possible</b> , or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).  You <b>must</b> top up the AdBlue® to <b>avoid starting being prevented</b> , or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.  To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2). It is <b>essential</b> to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.






Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>SCR emissions control system (BlueHDi Diesel)</b>	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		Flashing on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to <b>avoid a breakdown</b> .
		Flashing on switching on the ignition, associated with the Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	To start the engine, carry out (2).

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.**

**(2):** Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**(3):** Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.






Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>Engine diagnostic system</b>	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) <b>without fail</b> .
		Fixed.	The emissions control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
	<b>Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The system has been deactivated, via the vehicle configuration menu.	
		Flashing.	The system is operating.	The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	<b>Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)</b>	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
 + SERVICE	<b>Emergency brake anomaly (with electric parking brake)</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power.	If automatic release is not available, use manual release.




Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>Under-inflation</b>	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more tyres is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
 + <b>SERVICE</b>	<b>Under-inflation</b>	Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).
	<b>Diesel engine pre-heating</b>	Temporarily on.	When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. When the warning lamp goes off, starting is immediate if you press and hold: - the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox. - the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the warning lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
	<b>Airbags</b>	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).
	<b>Front passenger airbag (ON)</b>	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "ON" position.	<b>In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat – Risk of serious injury!</b>

**(1): You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.**




**(2):** Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**(3):** Go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.










Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	<b>Passenger airbag system</b>	Flashing.	The passenger airbag system is defective.	Carry out (3).
		Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the " <b>OFF</b> " position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).
	<b>Low fuel level</b>	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	When it first comes on, there remains <b>approximately 6 litres of fuel</b> in the tank (reserve).	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. <b>Never drive until completely empty</b> , this could damage the emissions and injection systems.
	<b>Lane Departure Warning System</b>	Fixed.	The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.	
		Flashing.	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
 <b>+ SERVICE</b>		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
 <b>OFF</b>	<b>Stop &amp; Start</b>	Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.	The Stop & Start system is deactivated.	The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop. Reactivate the function via the touch screen configuration menu.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Foot on the brake*	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position <b>P</b> .
	Foot on the clutch*	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.	Fully depress the clutch pedal.
	Rear foglamp	Fixed.	The lamp is on.	

### Green warning/indicator lamps

	<b>Stop &amp; Start</b>	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.	
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.	
	<b>Park Assist</b>	Fixed.	The function is active.	
	<b>Blind spot monitoring</b>	Fixed.	The function has been activated.	

\* Only with digital monochrome instrument panel.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Left-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
	Right-hand direction indicator	Flashing with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
	Sidelamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	Dipped beam headlamps	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	Directional headlamps	Flashing.	The directional headlamps system has a fault.	Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
	Front foglamps	Fixed.	The front foglamps are on.	
	Automatic wiping	Fixed.	Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.	
	Automatic headlamp dipping	Fixed.	The function has been activated in the touch screen ( <b>Driving</b> menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	
<b>Blue warning/indicator lamps</b>				
	Main beam headlamps	Fixed.	The main beams are on.	



## Indicators

### Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign "-".
- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

**i** The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may be triggered close to a due date.

Warning/indicator lamp	State	Cause	Actions/ Observations
	<b>Service spanner</b>	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.
	Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
	<b>Service spanner flashing</b>	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (For BlueHDi Diesel versions, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

### Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

- ☞ switch off the ignition,



- ☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
- ☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
- ☞ release the button when "=0" is displayed; the spanner disappears.

**i** If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

## Retrieving the service information

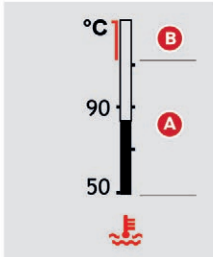
You can access the service information at any time.

- ☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

## Engine coolant temperature gauge

(Only with the 12" colour instrument panel.)



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the maximum temperature and the central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

**You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.**

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

After driving for a few minutes, the temperature and pressure in the cooling system increase.

To top up the level:

- ☞ wait for the engine to cool,
- ☞ unscrew the cap slightly to allow the pressure to drop,
- ☞ when the pressure has dropped, remove the cap,
- ☞ top up the level to the "MAX" mark.

**!** Be aware of the risk of scalding when topping up the coolant. Do not fill above the maximum level (indicated on the reservoir).

## Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version.)

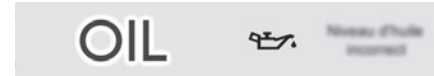
On versions fitted with an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds, after the servicing information.

**i** The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

### Oil level correct



### Oil level incorrect



This is indicated by the display of the message "Oil level incorrect" in the instrument panel screen, accompanied by the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the display of the message "Oil level measurement invalid" in the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the engine oil level is no longer monitored.  
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.  
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

## AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.  
Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

## In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

**!** The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

### Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)

When switching on the ignition, there is no automatic display of range in the instrument panel.

9 000

With the 12" colour instrument panel, pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range.

### With access via the boot

#### Remaining range between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the message is displayed every 185 miles (300 km) until the level is topped up. The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

#### Remaining range less than 375 miles (600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the permanent lighting of the Service warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.

It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

#### Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, and the Service warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

## With access via the fuel filler flap

**Range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)**



Each time the vehicle is started, this warning lamp comes on for about 30 seconds, accompanied by the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

These messages are accompanied by the recommendation to not top up with more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

**Range between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 62 miles (100 km) until the fluid is topped up. It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

**Range less than 62 miles (100 km)**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message ("Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up. It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

**Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®**



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

## In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

**!** A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 685 miles (1,100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".

The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

**i** If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

## During the permitted driving phase (between 685 and 0 miles (1,100 and 0 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 31 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 185 miles") indicating the remaining range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR system persists.

The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You should go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

### Starting prevented



Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

**!** You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system does not allow the engine to be started.

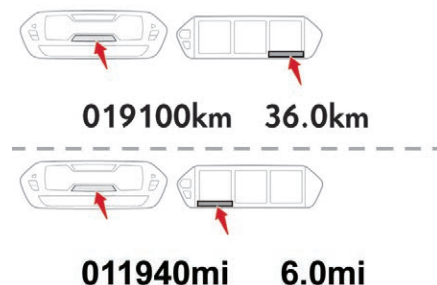
To be able to start the engine, you must call on a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Distance recorders

The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

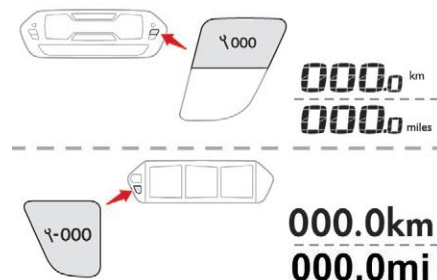
**i** When travelling abroad, you may need to change the unit of distance: the speed display must be expressed in the official units of the country (km or miles). The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

## Total distance recorder



It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

## Trip recorder



It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.

- With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

## Touch screen

The touch screen gives access to:

- the heating/air conditioning controls,
  - menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
  - audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- and, depending on equipment, allows:
- the display of alert messages and the visual parking sensors information,
  - the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice),
  - access to the internet services and navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

**!** As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out operations that require close attention with the vehicle stationary.

Some functions are not accessible when driving.

## General operation

### Recommendations

Use is possible in all temperatures.

Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.

Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands. Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

## Principles

Use the buttons on each side of the touch screen to access the menus, then use the buttons that appear on the touch screen. Certain functions may be displayed over 1 or 2 pages.

To deactivate/activate a function, press OFF/ON.

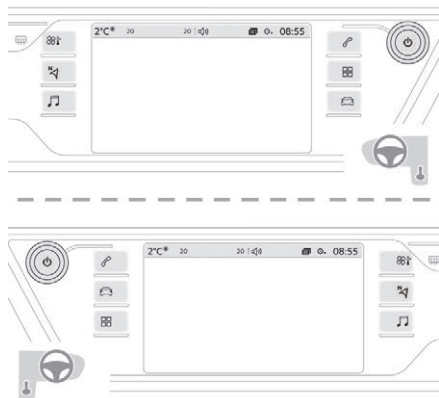
To modify a setting (lighting duration, etc.) or find additional information, press the symbol for the function.

**i** After a few moments with no action on the secondary page, the primary page is displayed automatically.

**OK** Use this button to confirm.

**←** Use this button to return to the previous page.

## Menus



### Air conditioning.

Allows adjustment of the various settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Heating, Manual air conditioning** and **Automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.



### Connected navigation.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Radio Media.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Telephone.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Applications.

Enables the trip computer to be displayed with the digital monochrome instrument panel.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



### Driving.

Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".



Volume control/mute.

See the "Audio and telematics" section.



Access to **Configuration**.

## Upper bar

Certain information is always present in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Summary of air conditioning information and access to the simplified menu (temperature and air flow adjustment only).
- Summary of information from the **Radio Media, Telephone** menus and navigation instructions\*.
- Notifications zone (texts and email)\*.

\* Depending on equipment

## Driving menu

### Vehicle settings tab

The functions are grouped into 4 families.


Families	Functions with CITROËN Connect Radio	Functions with CITROËN Connect Nav
<b>Driving lighting</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting.</li> <li>- "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.</li> <li>- "Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of the cornering lighting/directional headlamps.</li> <li>- "Daytime running lamps" (LED daytime running lamps) depending on country of sale.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Directional headlamps": activation/deactivation of the cornering lighting/directional headlamps.</li> <li>- "Daytime running lamps" (LED daytime running lamps) depending on country of sale.</li> </ul>
<b>Vehicle access</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Unlock driver's door only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door.</li> <li>- "Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of unlocking at the tailgate.</li> <li>- "Motorised tailgate": activation/deactivation of motorised operation of the tailgate.</li> <li>- "Hands-Free Tailgate Access": activation/deactivation of the hands-free tailgate function.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Unlock driver's door only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door.</li> <li>- "Unlock boot only": activation/deactivation of unlocking at the tailgate.</li> <li>- "Motorised tailgate": activation/deactivation of motorised operation of the tailgate.</li> <li>- "Hands-Free Tailgate Access": activation/deactivation of the hands-free tailgate function.</li> </ul>

Families	Functions with CITROËN Connect Radio	Functions with CITROËN Connect Nav
<b>Comfort</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear.</li> <li>- "Mood lighting": activation/deactivation of the interior ambient lighting.</li> <li>- "Mirror adaptation in reverse": activation/deactivation of the automatic mirror tilt when engaging reverse gear.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear.</li> <li>- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting.</li> <li>- "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.</li> <li>- "Mood lighting": activation/deactivation of the interior ambient lighting.</li> <li>- "Mirror adaptation in reverse": activation/deactivation of the automatic mirror tilt when engaging reverse gear.</li> </ul>
<b>Security</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Collision risk alert": activation/deactivation of the collision risk alert.</li> <li>- "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit recognition.</li> <li>- "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- "Collision risk alert": activation/deactivation of the collision risk alert.</li> <li>- "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit recognition.</li> <li>- "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.</li> </ul>

**i** For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

## Driving functions tab






Function	Comment
<b>Adjusting Speeds</b>	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter, cruise control and adaptive cruise control.
<b>Under-inflation initialisation</b>	Reinitialisation of the under-inflation system.
<b>Diagnostic</b>	List of current alerts.
<b>Lane assist</b>	Activation/deactivation of the "active lane departure warning" system.
<b>Parking sensors</b>	Activation/deactivation of the function.
<b>Automatic headlamp dipping</b>	Activation/deactivation of the "automatic headlamp dipping" function.
<b>Stop &amp; Start</b>	Activation/deactivation of the function.
<b>Blind spot sensors</b>	Activation/deactivation of the function.
<b>Panoramic visual aid</b>	Activation/deactivation of the function and then choice of options.
<b>Active cruise control</b>	Choice of the standard cruise control or adaptive cruise control function.
<b>Traction control</b>	Activation/deactivation of the function.







 For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

## Configuration



The functions available through the upper menu bar are detailed in the table below. Certain settings can be accessed on the second page.

Button	Comments
	Switch off the screen.
	Brightness adjustment.
	Choice and configuration of three personalised profiles and a common profile.
	Touch screen and instrument panel settings, etc.
	Activation and adjustment of the Wi-Fi settings.

Button	Comments
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choose an ambience for the 12-inch colour instrument panel.
	Choice of the type of information displayed in the 12-inch colour instrument panel.
	Choice of units: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit)</li> <li>- distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).</li> </ul>
	Choice of language for the touch screen and 12-inch colour instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time.

## Trip computer

System that gives you information on the current journey (range, current fuel consumption, average fuel consumption, etc.).

## Digital monochrome instrument panel



The data is accessible in the "Driving" menu.



### Permanent display:

- Select the "Applications" menu, then "Trip computer".

The information of the trip computer is displayed in tabs.

- Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

**Temporary display in a specific window:**

- ☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and to display the different tabs.

The current information tab with:

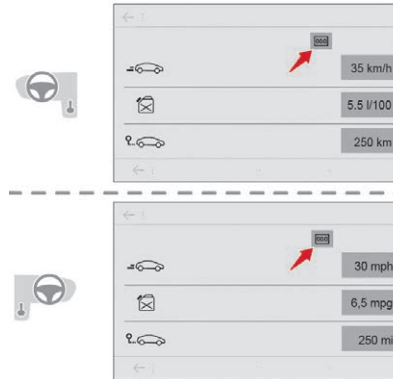
- Range.
- Current fuel consumption.
- Stop & Start time counter.

The trip "1" tab with:

- Average speed for the first trip.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance travelled.

The trip "2" tab with:

- Average speed for the second trip.
- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance travelled.

**Trip reset**

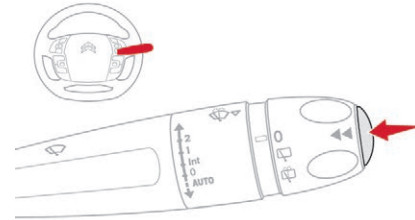
- ☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or on the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used identically.

For example, trip 1 can be used for daily calculations, and trip 2 for monthly calculations.

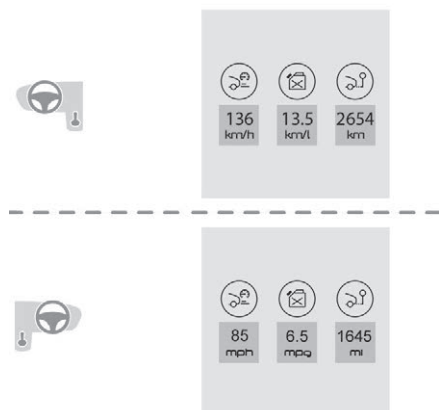
**12" colour instrument panel****Display of data on the instrument panel**

Trip computer data is displayed permanently when you select the "Dials" or "Personal" display mode.



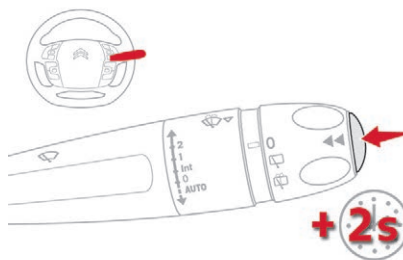
In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk will cause this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.

- ☞ Press the button on the end of the **wiper control stalk** to display the various tabs in succession.



- The current information tab with:
  - range,
  - current fuel consumption,
  - Stop & Start time counter.
- Trip 1 with:
  - the average speed,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled, for the first trip.
- Trip 2 with:
  - the average speed,
  - the average fuel consumption,
  - the distance travelled, for the second trip.

## Resetting the trip recorder



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button at the end of the wiper control stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **1** and **2** are independent and are used identically.

For example, trip **1** can be used for daily calculations, and trip **2** for monthly calculations.

## A few definitions

### Range



(miles or km)

The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

**i** This value may vary following a change in the style of driving or the terrain, resulting in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed. After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

**!** If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Current fuel consumption



(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated during the last few seconds.

**i** This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).


## Average fuel consumption




(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)

Calculated since the last time the trip was reset.

## Average speed

 (mph or km/h)  
Calculated since the last time the trip was reset.

## Distance travelled

 (miles or km)  
Calculated since the last time the trip was reset.



**Stop & Start time counter**  
(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

A time counter calculates the total of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

## Setting the date and time

### With CITROËN Connect Radio



Select the **Settings** menu.

Select **"System configuration"**.



Select **"Date and time"**.

- ☞ Select **"Date"** or **"Time"**.
- ☞ Choose the display formats.
- ☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.



☞ Press this button to confirm.

## With CITROËN Connect Nav

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with GPS is deactivated.



☞ Select the **Settings** menu.

☞ Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



☞ Select **"Setting the time-date"**.

- ☞ Select the **"Date"** or **"Time"** tab.
- ☞ Adjust the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.
- ☞ Press this button to confirm.



☞ Press this button to confirm.

## Additional adjustments

You can choose:

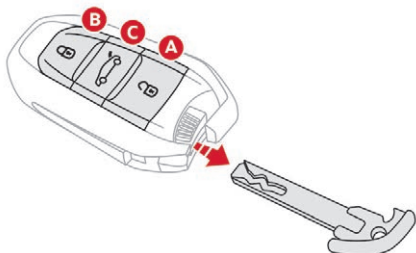
- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To change the time zone.
- To activate or deactivate synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).



The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Electronic key – Remote control

System that enables the activation of the unlocking and locking of the vehicle, the opening of the boot and, depending on the version, the alarm from a distance. It also locates and starts the vehicle, as well as protecting against theft.



- A. Unlocking the vehicle.
- B. Central locking system of the vehicle.
- C. Locking the vehicle, and depending on the version, releasing the tailgate or opening the motorised tailgate.

The electronic key includes an integral back-up key.

## Unlocking the vehicle



### Complete unlocking

- ☞ Press the button.

### Selective unlocking



It is set via the **Driving** menu.

Complete unlocking is activated by default.

- ☞ To unlock the driver's door only, press the unlocking button once.
- ☞ To unlock the other doors and the boot, press the button again.

## Unlocking the vehicle and opening the boot



- ☞ Press and hold this button to unlock the vehicle and, depending on version, release the tailgate or open the motorised tailgate.



The setting for the motorised tailgate is in the **Driving** menu.

By default, motorised operation is activated.

**i** The direction indicators flash for a few seconds. The spotlamps in the door mirrors come on. Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold, the welcome lighting comes on, the alarm is deactivated.

## Locking the vehicle



### Normal locking

- ☞ Press the button.

Maintaining pressure allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.

**!** Ensure that nothing could prevent the correct operation of the windows. Be aware of children when operating the windows.

**i** The direction indicators come on for a few seconds. Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is activated.

**i** If one of the openings (doors or boot) is still open, the locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and with no action on the doors or boot, the vehicle will lock itself again automatically after about 30 seconds. If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

**i** The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Deadlocking

**!** Deadlocking deactivates the interior door controls and it also deactivates the manual central control button. Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the locking button.

☞ Within five seconds, press the button again to deadlock the vehicle.

## Locating your vehicle

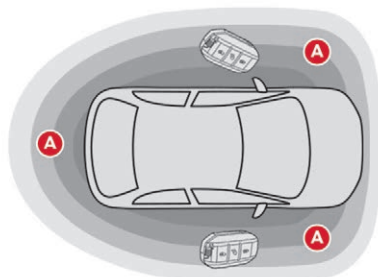
This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press this button.

The direction indicators will flash for around 10 seconds and the courtesy lamps will switch on.

## Keyless Entry and Starting

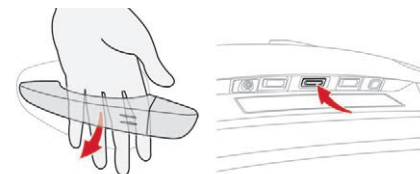


This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key in the recognition zone "A".

**i** The electronic key is also used as a remote control. For more information on the **Remote Control**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** For reasons of safety and theft protection, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it. It is recommended that you keep it on your person.

## Unlocking the vehicle



## Complete unlocking

☞ With the electronic key on your person and in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of one of the front doors to unlock the vehicle or press the tailgate opening control (situated in the centre).

## Selective unlocking



Activation or deactivation of selective locking of the tailgate is done in the **Driving** menu.

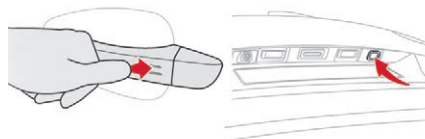
Complete unlocking is activated by default.

- ☞ To unlock only the driver's door, with the electronic key on your person, pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.
- ☞ To unlock the complete vehicle, pass your hand behind the front passenger door handle with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

**i** The direction indicators flash for a few seconds.  
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold, the alarm is deactivated and the welcome lighting comes on.

## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking



- ☞ With the key in recognition zone **A**, press on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right) for versions that are not equipped with the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function.

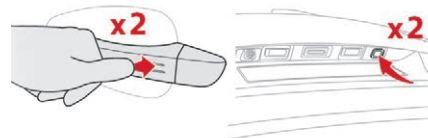
Maintaining pressure allows the windows to be raised to the desired position.  
It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the keys is left inside the vehicle.

**!** Ensure that nothing could prevent the proper closure of the windows.  
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

**i** The direction indicators come on for a few seconds.  
Depending on version, the door mirrors fold and the alarm is activated.

## Deadlocking

**!** Deadlocking deactivates the interior door controls and it also deactivates the manual central control button.  
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.



By the doors or tailgate:

- ☞ With the electronic key in recognition zone **A**, press the door handle of one of the front doors (at the markings), or the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right) for versions that are not equipped with the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function, to lock the vehicle.
- ☞ Within 5 seconds, press the door handle again, or the locking control on the tailgate (on the right) for versions that are not equipped with the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function, to deadlock the vehicle.

**i** If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place. However, the alarm (if fitted) will be fully activated after about 45 seconds.

**i** If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and no action is taken at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm will also be reactivated automatically.

**i** The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

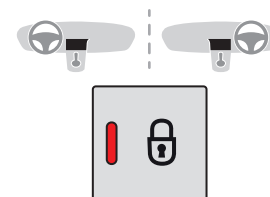
**!** As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period. Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.



**!** In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader. For more information on starting with **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

## Central locking

### Manual



-  Press this button to operate the central locking of the vehicle (doors and boot) from inside the vehicle. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.
-  Pressing the button again unlocks the vehicle completely. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

**i** The indicator lamp also goes off when unlocking one or more doors.

**!** The central locking does not work if one of the doors is open.

**i** If the vehicle is locked from the outside or deadlocked, this button does not work. To unlock the vehicle from the inside:

- ☞ After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls.
- ☞ After deadlocking, use the remote control, the Keyless Entry and Starting system or the integral key.

## Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically when driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)).

To deactivate or reactivate this function (activated by default):

- ☞ Press the button until a message appears in the instrument panel.

## **i** Transporting long or voluminous objects

Press the central locking control to drive with the boot open and the doors unlocked.

## Advice

### **!** Remote control

The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.

Do not press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. The remote control may stop working and would have to be reinitialised. The remote control cannot operate when the key is in the reader, even when the ignition is switched on.

### **Electrical interference**

The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

### **Anti-theft protection**

Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.

Do not forget to turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

### ! Locking the vehicle

Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the interior difficult in an emergency. As a safety precaution (with children on board), take the electronic key with you when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

### i Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

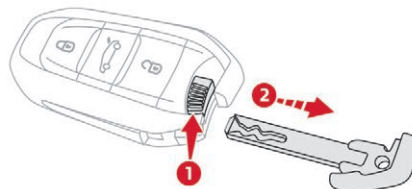
## Back-up procedures

### Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

## Back-up opening/closing with the integral key

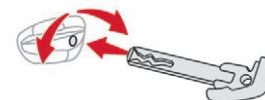


The integral key is used to lock and unlock the vehicle when there is a malfunction of the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system caused in particular by:

- key battery flat, vehicle battery discharged or disconnected, etc.
- vehicle located in an area with strong electromagnetic signals.
- ☞ To extract the back-up key, pull and hold button 1 while extracting key 2.

The integral key also enables:

- deactivation/reactivation of the front passenger airbag,
- back-up locking of the passenger doors,
- locking of the vehicle without the alarm being activated.



- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.
- ☞ Turn the key rearwards again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Flashing of the direction indicators for a few seconds confirms that the procedure has completed correctly.

i If your vehicle is fitted with an alarm, this function will not be activated when locking with the key.

If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds on opening the door; switch on the ignition to stop it.

## Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

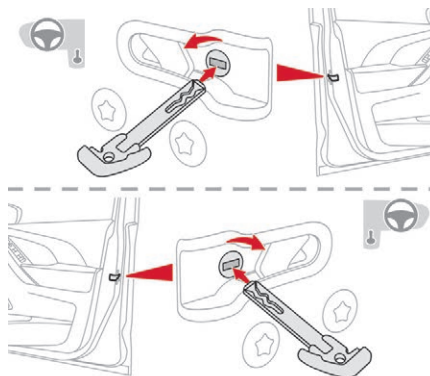
**!** In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to lock the boot and thus ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

## Driver's door

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.

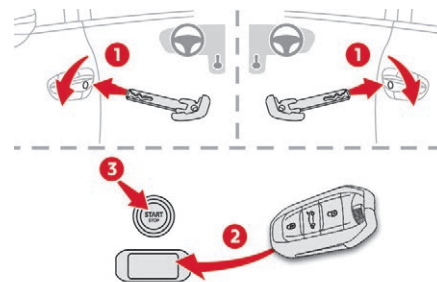
**i** If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not activated/deactivated when the vehicle is locked/unlocked. Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

## Passenger doors



- ☞ Open the doors.
- ☞ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
- ☞ Insert the key into the latch on the edge of the door and turn it an eighth of a turn to the right, for the right-hand side, and to the left, for the left-hand side. The locking is effective when the slot is horizontal.
- ☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

## Remote control problem – reinitialisation

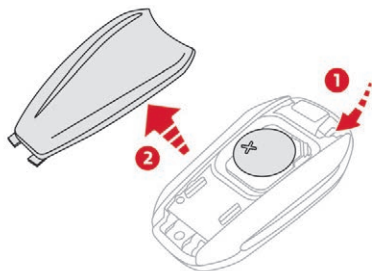


Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.

- ☞ Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
- ☞ Place the electronic key in the reader.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition by pressing "START/STOP".

The electronic key is fully operational again. If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## Changing the battery



Battery ref.: CR2032/3 volts.

Battery replacement is signalled by the display of a message.

- ☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cutout.
- ☞ Remove the cover.
- ☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
- ☞ Place the new battery into its location observing the original direction.
- ☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.



Do not throw the remote control batteries away, they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

## Doors

### Opening

#### From outside

- ☞ After unlocking the vehicle or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

#### From inside

- ☞ Pull the interior opening control of a front door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

### Closing



When a door is not closed correctly:

- **engine running**, this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel (digital monochrome) for a few seconds,
- **vehicle moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel (digital monochrome and 12 inch colour) for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

## Boot

### Opening the tailgate

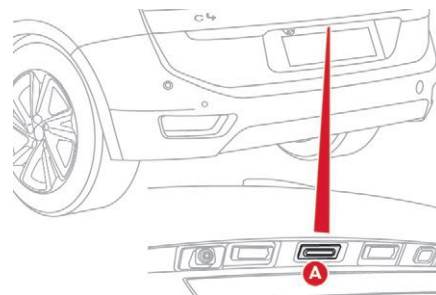
#### Using the electronic key/remote control



- ☞ Press and hold this button to release the tailgate. If the vehicle was locked, this action unlocks the vehicle beforehand.
- ☞ Raise the tailgate.

**i** When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

#### With the tailgate opening control



- With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system in the coverage zone, press control **A** on the tailgate.
- Raise the tailgate.

**!** The tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

## Closing the tailgate

- Lower the tailgate using the interior grips.
- Release the grips and press down on the outside of the tailgate to close it.

If the tailgate is not properly closed:



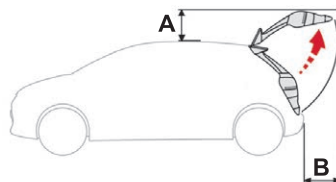
- engine running**, this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel (digital monochrome) for a few seconds,
- vehicle moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), this warning lamp and a message appear in the instrument panel (digital monochrome and 12 inch colour) for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.



**!** In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

## Motorised tailgate

### General points

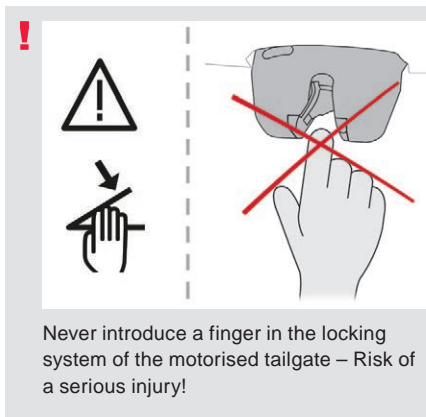
The motorised operation of the tailgate can be activated or deactivated by selecting "**Motorised tailgate**" in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.



	A = 517 mm B = 431 mm
	A = 448 mm B = 573 mm

The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.

Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



Never introduce a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate – Risk of a serious injury!

### Safety anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees to allow the obstacle to be cleared.

Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

**!** To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:

- ensure that there is no person close to the rear of the vehicle,
- monitor the activity of your rear passengers, particularly any children.

## Bicycle carrier/Towing device

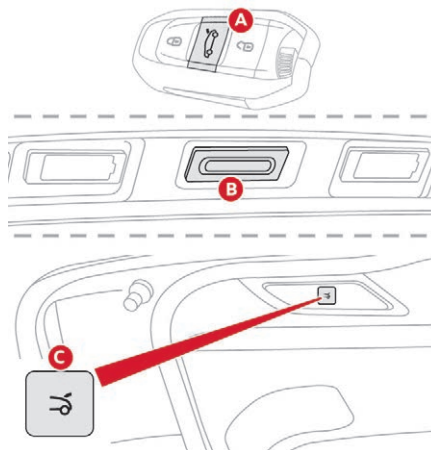
The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

When installing a bicycle carrier on a towing device with connection of a cable to the towing socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not approved by CITROËN, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

## Operation

There are several ways of operating the motorised tailgate:



- using the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system **(A)**,
- using the exterior tailgate control **(B)**,
- using the interior tailgate control **(C)**,
- with a kicking movement, if your vehicle has the hands-free function.

For more information on the **Hands-free tailgate**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Motorised opening

### Tailgate opening using the electronic key/remote control (A)



- ☞ Hold the remote control button down for several seconds.

or

### Tailgate opening using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system (B)

- ☞ Press control **B** on the tailgate with the electronic key within the coverage zone.

**i** When selective locking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

## Opening the tailgate

- ☞ After the vehicle is fully unlocked, press control **B** on the tailgate.
- The command is confirmed by an audible beep.

**i** By default, the tailgate opens fully or to the stored position.

## Motorised closing

There are two options:

- ☞ Press and release the exterior control **B**.  
or



- ☞ Press button **C** and release it.

**i** The motorised tailgate has a safety anti-pinch feature which interrupts the closing movement if there is something in the way.

**i** At any point, it is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate:



- by pressing one of these two buttons,  
or
- by pressing the exterior control **B**.

After a movement is interrupted, pressing one of the controls again restarts the movement, unless you press the remote control button, which only controls opening.

**i** Repeated opening and closing of the motorised tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible. Allow the motor to cool down for ten minutes before operating the tailgate again.  
If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

## Detection of obstacles

If an obstacle (person or object) is encountered, the anti-pinch system stops the closing movement and raises the tailgate by a few centimetres to clear the obstacle.

## Memorising an opening position

Where height is restricted (garage with a low ceiling, etc.) it is possible to limit the opening angle of the motorised tailgate.

This memorisation is done as follows:

- open the tailgate to the desired position,
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Memorisation of the maximum opening position of the tailgate is confirmed by an audible signal.

To cancel the memorised position:

- stop the tailgate in an intermediate position,
- press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds.

Cancellation of the memorised position is confirmed by an audible signal.

## Manual operation

The motorised tailgate can be opened and closed manually, even if motorised operation is activated.

However, any manual operation must be done with the tailgate first stopped.

During manual operations to open or close the motorised tailgate, you will no longer be assisted by the struts. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore entirely normal.

## Reinitialising the motorised tailgate

This operation is necessary where there is no movement – after detection of an obstacle, reconnecting or recharging the battery, etc.

- ☞ Open the tailgate manually, if necessary.
- ☞ Fully close the tailgate manually.

If the problem persists, contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

## Precautions in use

### **i** In wintry conditions

In the event of an accumulation of snow on the tailgate, clear the snow before commanding a motorised opening of the tailgate.

The formation of ice can block the tailgate and prevent its opening: wait until the ice melts with the heating of the passenger compartment.

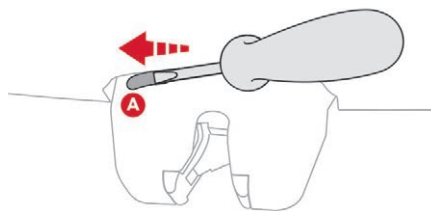
### **i** When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, lock your vehicle to avoid the risk of unexpected opening.

## Back-up control

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

## Unlocking



- ☞ Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- ☞ Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- ☞ Move the latch to the left.

## Locking after closing

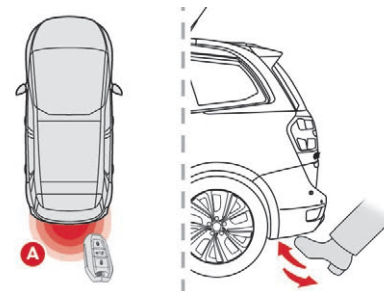
If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

## Hands-free tailgate

To enable you to open or close the tailgate while your hands are full, the motorised tailgate may be fitted with the hands-free function.

For more information on the **Motorised tailgate**, refer to the corresponding section.

## "Hands-free" opening



- ☞ If your hands are full, with the remote control on you in the recognition zone **A**, make a kicking movement with your foot below the rear bumper.

Flashing of the direction indicator lamps and a beeping sound confirm the request. The tailgate opens to the stored position.

- i** Making another kicking movement with your foot below the bumper while the tailgate is opening interrupts the movement. A third kicking movement reverses the direction of movement.

- i** If the vehicle is locked, it unlocks before the tailgate opens.

**!** Ensure that you are steady on your feet before making the kicking movement below the rear bumper. Take care not to touch the exhaust system, which may be hot – Risk of burns!

## "Hands-free" closing

**☞** If your hands are full, with the remote control on you in the recognition zone **A**, make a kicking movement with your foot below the rear bumper.

Flashing of the direction indicator lamps and a beeping sound confirm the request.

**i** Making another kicking movement with your foot below the bumper while the tailgate is closing interrupts the movement. A third kicking movement reverses the direction of movement.

## Deactivation

By default, hands-free access is activated. This function can be activated or deactivated by selecting **"Hands-Free Tailgate Access"** in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

## Automatic locking

To lock the vehicle when the tailgate closes using a kicking movement, activate **"Hands-free tailgate access self-locking"** in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

## Recommendations related to the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function

If several kicking movements to operate the tailgate have no effect, wait a few seconds before trying again.

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (e.g. smartphone).

The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly if:

- you hitch or unhitch a trailer,
- you fit or remove a bicycle carrier,
- you load or unload bicycles from a bicycle carrier,
- you place or lift something behind the vehicle,
- an animal approaches the rear bumper,

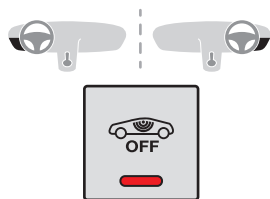
- you are washing your vehicle,
- your vehicle is being serviced,
- you are accessing the spare wheel (depending on version).

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function.

**!** After installing a towing device, it is essential to contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop so that it is taken into account by the detection system. Otherwise, there is a risk of malfunction of the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function.

**!** Ensure that no object or person might prevent the correct opening or closing of the tailgate. Be particularly aware of children when operating the tailgate.

## Alarm



System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins. It provides the following types of monitoring:

- **Exterior perimeter:**  
The system checks whether the vehicle is opened. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.
- **Interior volumetric:**  
The system checks for any variation in the volume in the passenger compartment. The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

**! Self-protection function:** the system checks for the putting out of service of its own components. The alarm is triggered if the siren's battery, button or wiring is disconnected or damaged.

**!** For all work on the alarm system, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

### Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.



☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control.

or

☞ Lock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp for the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

After an instruction to lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds, the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.

If an opening (door, boot, bonnet, etc.) is incorrectly closed, the vehicle is not locked but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds at the same time as the interior volumetric monitoring.

## Deactivation

☞ Press one of the remote control unlocking buttons.



Short press



Long press

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp for the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

**i** When the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

## Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- leaving a pet in the vehicle,

- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel,
- having your vehicle towed,
- transport by ship.

## Deactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press the alarm button until the indicator lamp is on continuously.
- ☞ Get out of the vehicle.
- ☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp for the button flashes once per second.

To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

## Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

- ☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

- ☞ Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp for the button flashes once per second again.

## Triggering of the alarm

This results in sounding the siren and flashing the direction indicators for thirty seconds. The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.

When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp for the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

## Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ☞ Unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
- ☞ Open the door; this sets off the alarm.
- ☞ Upon switching on the ignition the alarm stops. The indicator lamp for the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

## Operating fault

When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp for the button indicates a fault with the system.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

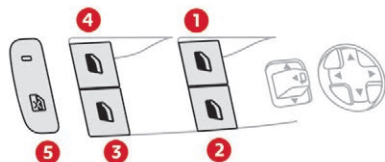
## Automatic activation

(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)

The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- ☞ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

## Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear.
4. Left-hand rear.
5. Deactivate the electric window switches located at the rear seats.

### Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently. The window stops as soon as the control is released.

### Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull switch fully: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window switches remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition. Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

### Safety anti-pinch

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again. In the event of unwanted opening of the window on closing, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The anti-pinch safety function is not active during this system activation operation.

### Deactivating the rear controls for the rear windows



For the safety of your children, press switch **5** to prevent operation of the rear windows irrespective of their positions.

The indicator lamp in the button comes on, accompanied by a message confirming activation. It remains on, as long as the deactivation is in place. Use of the rear electric windows from the driver's controls remains possible.

### Reinitialisation of the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the anti-pinch safety function must be reinitialised. The anti-pinch safety function is not active during these operations:

For each window:

- Lower the window fully, then raise it, it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window closes completely,
- Continue to pull the switch for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

**!** In the event of contact (pinching) during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned. When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that nothing is preventing correct closing of the windows.

The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Be particularly aware of children when operating the windows.

Be aware of passengers or other persons present when closing the windows using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

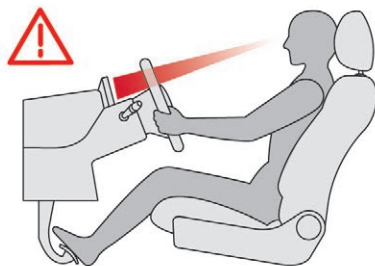
## Front seats

### Correct driving position

**!** For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the height and reach of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.



**!** Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

**!** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

## Manual adjustments

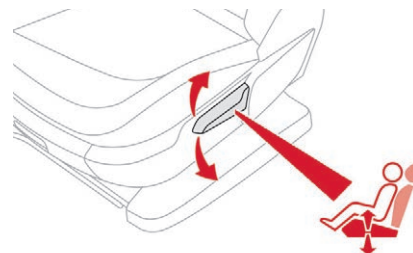
### Longitudinal



- ☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

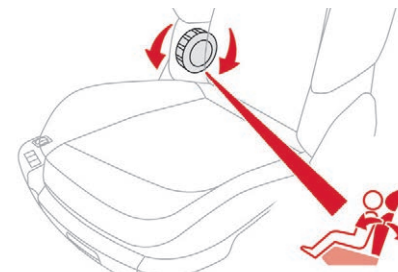
When your seat is at the correct distance, move it forwards and backwards slightly without using the control bar to ensure the seat is properly locked.

### Seat cushion height



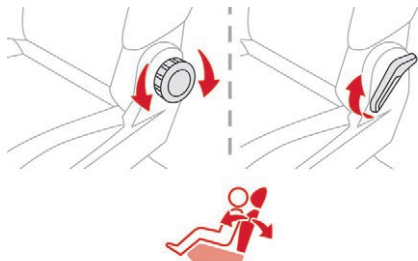
- ☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

### Driver seat backrest angle



- ☞ Turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

## Passenger seat backrest angle



- ☞ Pull the control upwards or turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

When the backrest is correctly inclined, release the control.

- ! To prevent the backrest from suddenly folding forwards and hitting you, hold the backrest with your back or hand while you move the control.

## Table position for the front passenger seat backrest



- ! Check that no object, either on or underneath the seat, could hinder its movement.

- ☞ Place the head restraint in the low position, raise the armrest and fold the tray on the back of the seat.
- ☞ Pull the control fully up and tip the backrest forwards.

To return to the normal position, guide the backrest backwards until it locks into place.

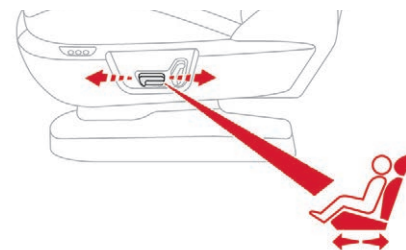
This position, together with that of the rear seats, allows you to transport long objects inside the vehicle.

- ! In this position, the backrest can support a maximum load of **30 kg**.

## Electric adjustments

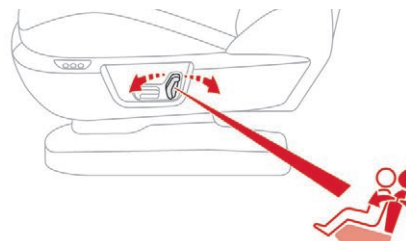
- i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

### Longitudinal (driver seat)



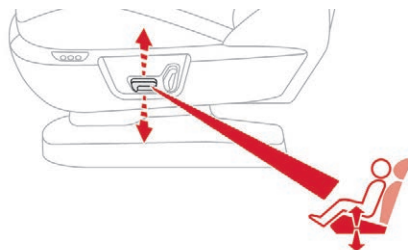
- ☞ Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

### Backrest angle



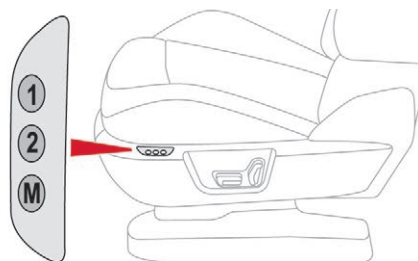
- ☞ Tilt the control forwards or backwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

## Cushion height and angle



- ☞ Tilt the rear part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- ☞ Tilt the front part of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the desired angle.

## Storing driving positions



System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat.

Two positions can be stored and recalled, using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

### Storing a position using buttons M/1/2

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Adjust your seat.
- ☞ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.

Storing a new position overwrites the previous position.

### Recalling a stored position

- ☞ With the ignition on or the engine running, press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.

An audible signal indicates the completion of the adjustment.

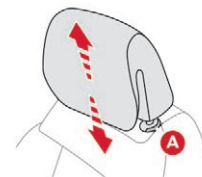
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.

A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.

Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

## Additional adjustments

### Head restraint height



- ☞ To raise a head restraint, pull it upwards.
- ☞ To lower the head restraint, press the lug **A** and push down on the head restraint at the same time.

The head restraint has a frame with notches which prevents it from lowering; this is a safety device in case of impact.

**i** The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

### Removing a head restraint

- ☞ To remove the head restraint, press the lug **A** and pull the head restraint upwards.
- ☞ To put the head restraint back in place, engage the head restraint stems in the openings, keeping them in line with the seat backrest and press the lug **A** at the same time.

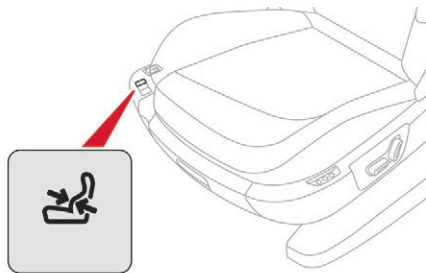
## Relax head restraints



Depending on the version, you can fold the sides for greater comfort.

**!** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

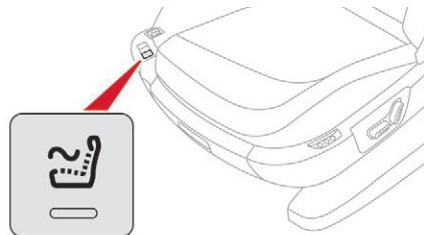
## Electric lumbar adjustment



☞ Press the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

## Massage function

### Activation/Deactivation



☞ Press this button.  
Its indicator lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour.

During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes of break). After one hour the function is deactivated, the indicator lamp goes off.

Deactivate the massage function by pressing this button, its indicator lamp goes off.

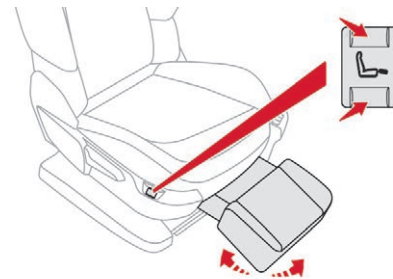
This function provides a lumbar massage to the occupants in front; it only operates when the engine is running as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

### Adjustment of intensity

☞ Press this button to choose one of the two available levels of massage intensity.

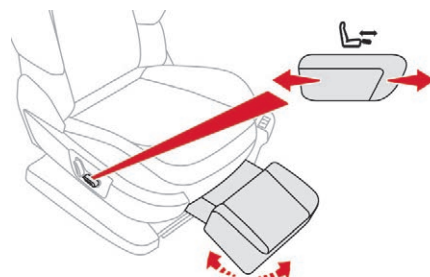
## Electric leg rest

### Passenger seat with manual adjustments



☞ Press the front or rear part of the control to unfold or fold the leg rest.  
The movement stops when you release the control.

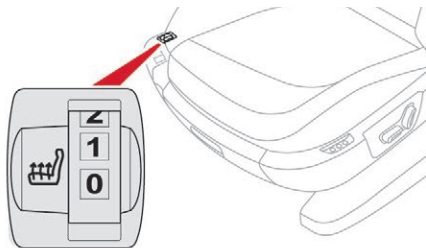
## Electric passenger seat



- ☞ Push the control forwards or rearwards to unfold or fold the leg rest.  
The movement stops when you release the control.

**i** Prior to handling the leg rest, make sure that nothing obstructs the movement.

## Heated seats



- ☞ Use the adjustment wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:

- 0: Off.
- 1: Low.
- 2: Medium.
- 3: High.

With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.  
Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.  
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.



Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, for example).

There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.

Do not use the function:

- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:

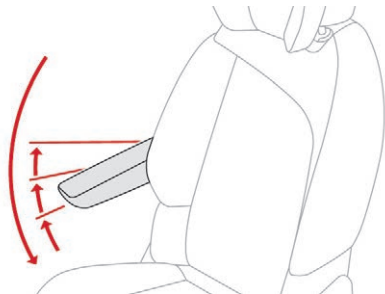
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:

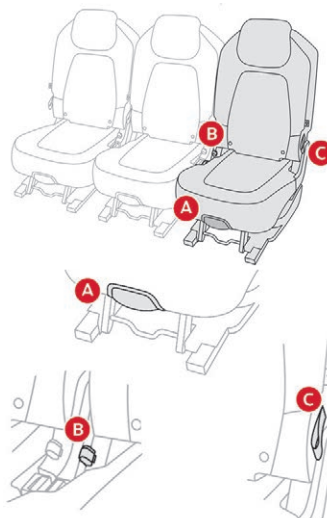
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

## Front armrest

### Height adjustment



- ☞ Lower the armrest completely.
- ☞ Lift it again to the desired position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ Once it is in the high position, lift it to unlock it and bring it to the low position.



- A. Longitudinal adjustment: lift the lever.
- B. Tilt angle adjustment: pull the strap and push the seat back.
- C. Folding the seat: give a firm upward pull on the strap to unlock the seat.
- D. Folding the seat from the back: pull the strap then push the backrest forward.

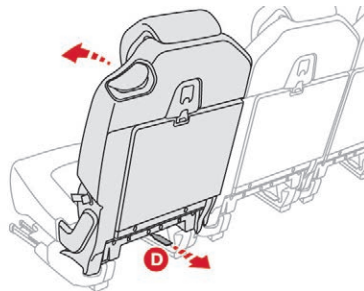
## Longitudinal adjustment



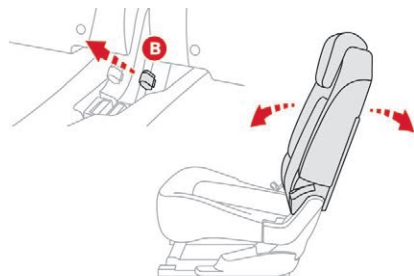
- ☞ Lift lever A, at the front of the seat cushion and adjust the seat as required.

## Second row seats

The 3 seats of the 2<sup>nd</sup> row are independent and are the same width. Their backrests are adjustable to adapt the boot load space.



## "Comfort" position



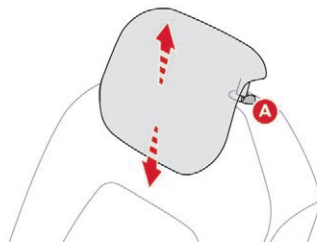
☞ Pull strap **B** and push the seat back. The backrest tilts and the cushion rotates slightly.

## Returning the seat to its initial position

☞ Pull strap **B** and push the seat forward.

**!** Do not allow children to operate the seats unsupervised.

## Rear head restraints



The rear head restraints are removable and have two positions:

- high, the position for use,
- low, the position for storage.

To raise the head restraint, pull it upwards.

To lower it, press the lug **A** then push the head restraint downwards.

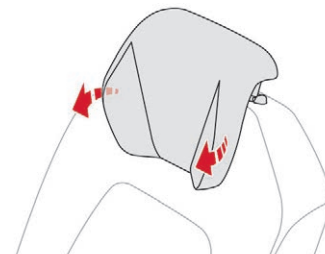
To remove it:

- move the head restraint to the high position,
- press the lug **A** while pulling the head restraint upwards.

To replace it:

- engage the head restraint rods in the apertures, keeping the head restraint in line with the seat backrest.

## Relax head restraints



Depending on the version, you can fold the sides to obtain a better comfortable position.

**!** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

## Flat floor

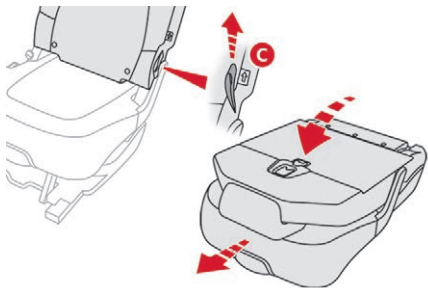


Each seat folds down to the floor to adapt the boot volume as required.

## Folding the seat

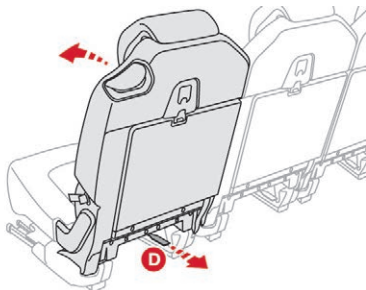
☞ Place the seats in the maximum rearwards longitudinal position.

### From outside the vehicle



- ☞ Give a firm upward pull on strap **C**, as shown by the arrow, to unlock the seat; keep pulling the strap until the seat is completely folded. Push the backrest slightly forward so that the backrest tilts and folds over the cushion. The seat and cushion fold down to the floor.

### From the boot, for example when loading



You can fold the second row seat(s) directly from the boot, after having first folded the third row seats.

- ☞ Pull strap **D** to unlock the desired seat and give the backrest a slight push forward. To prevent any damage to the mechanism, strap **D** will unclip if excessive force is applied. It is just a matter of clipping it back into place to make the system operational again.

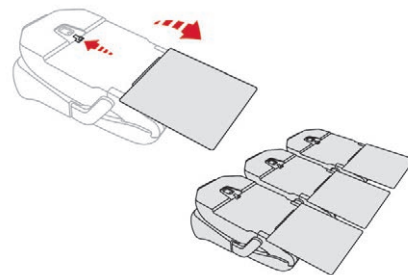
### Replacing the seat



- ☞ If necessary, straighten the continuity panels of the 2nd row of seats and lock them.
- ☞ Raise the backrest and push it back until it latches into place.

**!** Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts, make sure that the side belts are properly tensioned. The central seat belt must be put away. Secure the buckles of the three seat belts to their anchoring points.

### Continuity panels



Each seat has a continuity panel at the bottom of the backrest, which, once unfolded:

- allows for a continuous loading surface in the boot, whatever the position of the seats,
- prevents objects from sliding beneath the 2nd row seats.

**!** These continuity panels are not designed to support a weight greater than 30 kg.

**Unlocking/Locking the continuity panels**

- ☞ Before unfolding the continuity panels, check that the 2nd row seats are moved back as far as possible.
- ☞ Slide the latch of the continuity panel upwards to unlock it.
- ☞ Straighten out the continuity panel, then slide the latch downwards to lock it.

**Access to third row seats**

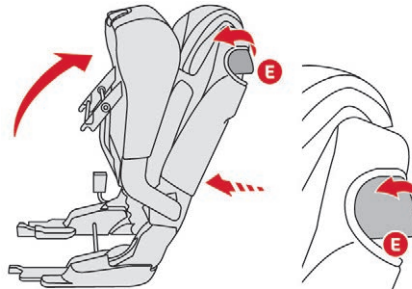
Third row seats are accessed via the second row lateral seats.



**i** Before moving the seats, make sure that the trays behind the front row seats are properly stowed.

- ☞ Pull lever **E**. The seat unlocks and the cushion comes up against the backrest.
- ☞ Keep lever **E** up by pushing it forwards. The seat and cushion slide towards the front seat.

This frees space behind the seat, allowing the third row seat passengers to get into their seats.

**Getting out of the vehicle from third row seats**

- ☞ Lift lever **E**. The seat unlocks and the cushion moves up to the backrest.
- ☞ Push the backrest holding lever **E** upwards.

**Replacing the seat from outside the vehicle, with door open**

If passengers are seated in the third row seats:

- ☞ manually push the seat and cushion back as far as it can go; the seat does not return to the maximum back position, leaving space free for the third row passengers' legs,
- ☞ fold the cushion until it locks.

Make sure there is nothing on or under the cushion of the seat you want to move.

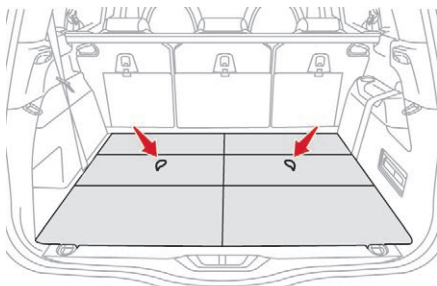
**!** If this system fails (lever **E**), the third row passengers can also get out after having folded the backrest of the second row seats using strap **D**. Do not let children operate the seats unsupervised.

**Third row seats****Concertina boards**

The two rigid concertina boards, which are built in to the vehicle, cover the two third row seats, when these are in the folded away position.

**i** Each of the two boards can support a maximum load of 100 kg.

## Folding the concertina boards

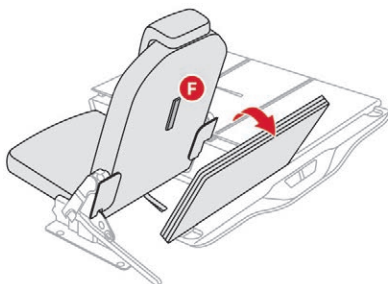


Pull the strap, the 3 parts of the board fold into concertina form.

When the third row seats are straightened, these folded concertina boards can be left:

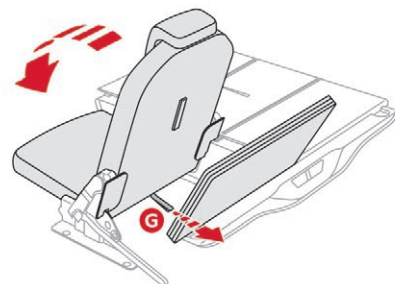
- either flat behind the seats,
- or in the vertical position, thus clearing the inside of the seat as a storage space.

## Installing the seats



- ☞ Remove the load space cover. For more information on the **Interior fittings** and particularly on the load space cover, refer to the corresponding section.
- ☞ Straighten the continuity panels of the second row of seats and lock them in place.
- ☞ Fold the concertina board and straighten it vertically.
- ☞ Pull strap **F**, located behind the backrest of the seat. The backrest tilts backwards bringing the cushion. The seat locks in the open position.

## Seat storage

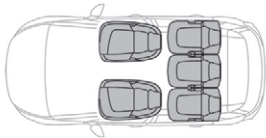


- ☞ Straighten the continuity panels of the second row of seats and lock them in place.
- ☞ Lower the head restraints.
- ☞ Correctly position the concertina board vertically behind the seat.
- ☞ Make sure that the seat belts of the 3<sup>rd</sup> row of seats are correctly fastened to the loops and that they do not have any creases.
- ☞ Pull strap **G**, located at the bottom of the backrest of the seat. The seat is unlocked.
- ☞ Then, push the backrest slightly forwards. The backrest tilts and folds on the cushion. The folded seat is arranged at the back of its storage area provided for this purpose.
- ☞ Put the concertina boards back above the folded down seats.

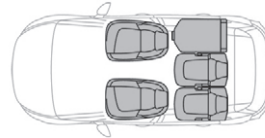
**!** Before working on the seats of the third row, straighten the rigid boards of the seats of the second row and lock them in place.  
 Do not try to fold a seat in the third row without having opened it until the backrest is fully locked.  
 Do not leave objects on the cushion or below the cushion of the seats of the third row, when you fold them.  
 Do not guide strap **G** when storing the seat, your may jam your fingers.  
 Do not let children manipulate the seats unsupervised.

## Seat modular design and configuration

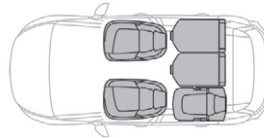
### Configuration examples



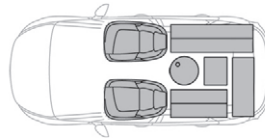
5 seats



4 seats

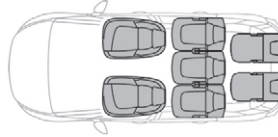


3 seats

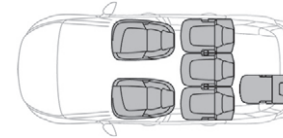


Transporting items

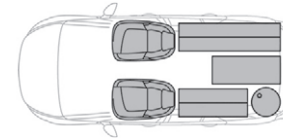
### Configuration examples



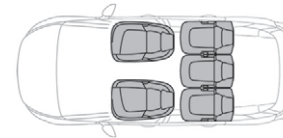
7 seats



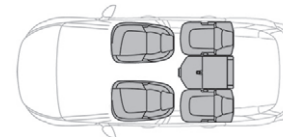
6 seats



Transporting items



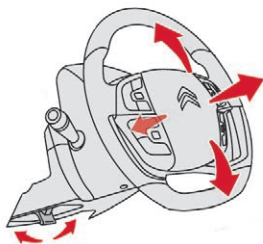
5 seats



4 seats

**i** In order to easily adapt your interior space, you can fold all of the rear seats individually and fold them onto the second row floor, and beneath the floor on the third row. This gives you a continuous load floor up to the back of the front seats. Folding or unfolding the seats must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

## Steering wheel adjustment

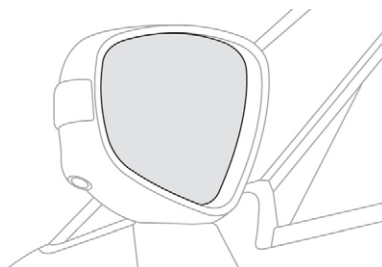


- ☞ **When stationary**, pull the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- ☞ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ☞ Push the control lever to lock the steering wheel.

**!** As a safety measure, these adjustments should only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

## Mirrors

### Door mirrors



Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking. They can also be folded for parking in narrow spaces.

### Demisting – Defrosting



Demisting-defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

**i** For more information on **Rear screen demist - defrost**, refer to the associated section.

### Adjustment



- ☞ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ☞ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ☞ Return control **A** to the central position.

**!** As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots. Objects seen in the mirror are in reality closer than they appear. Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

### Folding

- ☞ From outside: lock the vehicle using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** from the central position rearwards.

- i** If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

## Unfolding

- ☞ From outside: unlock the vehicle using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- ☞ From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** from the central position rearwards.

- i** The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- i** If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

## Automatic tilting in reverse gear

System which provides a view of the ground during parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

They return to their initial position:

- a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear,
- once the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h),
- on switching off the engine.

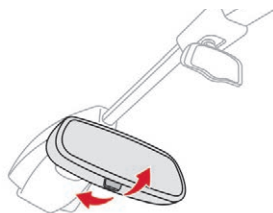
This function can be activated/deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

- ☞ Select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Comfort**" and "**Mirror adaptation in reverse**".

## Rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlights from other vehicles, etc.

### Manual model



#### Adjustment

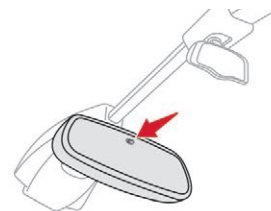
- ☞ Adjust the mirror so that the glass is directed correctly in the "day" position.

#### Day/night position

- ☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

- ☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

## Automatic "electrochromic" model



This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

- i** In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## Child surveillance mirror



A child surveillance mirror is installed above the interior mirror. This allows you to keep watch over the passengers in the back of the vehicle and facilitates discussion between passengers in the front and the back without needing to adjust the mirror and without turning around. It can be easily folded to avoid dazzle.

## Ventilation

### Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

### Air treatment

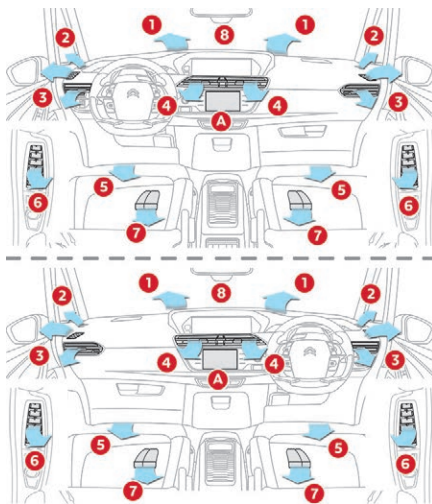
The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver:

- direct arrival in the passenger compartment (air intake),
- passage through a heating circuit (heating),
- passage through a cooling circuit (air conditioning).

## Control panel

The controls of this system are accessible in the **Air conditioning** menu of the touch screen **A**. The demisting/defrosting controls for the windscreen and rear screen are located to the left of the touch screen.

## Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/defrosting vents.

2. Front quarter window demisting/defrosting vents.
3. Front side window demisting/defrosting vents.  
Adjustable and closable side air vents.
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Side vents of the 2<sup>nd</sup> row.
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells of the second row.
8. Sunshine sensor.

## Recommendations for ventilation and air conditioning

- i** In order for these systems to be fully effective, follow the operation and maintenance guidelines below:
  - ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
  - ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
  - ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
  - ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly. We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

To avoid the windows misting up and deterioration in the quality of the air:

- do not drive for too long with the ventilation switched off.
- do not keep air recirculation set for an extended period.



If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first air the passenger compartment for a few moments.  
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.



The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.



### Stop & Start

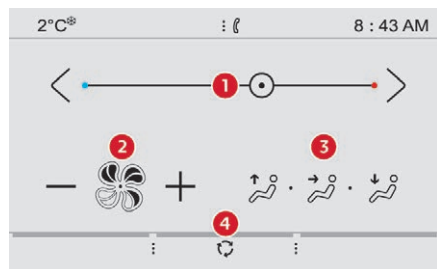
The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. To maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, you may temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Heating

The heating only operates when the engine is running.

Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Temperature adjustment.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air intake/Air recirculation.

## Temperature adjustment

Press one of the arrows **1**, or move the slider from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

## Air flow adjustment

Press one of the buttons **2** (- or +) to decrease or increase the speed of the air booster fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

**!** Avoid driving for too long without ventilation – risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

## Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the buttons **3**.



Windscreen.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.

Illumination of the button indicates the presence of pulsed air in the specified direction.

For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

## Air intake/Air recirculation

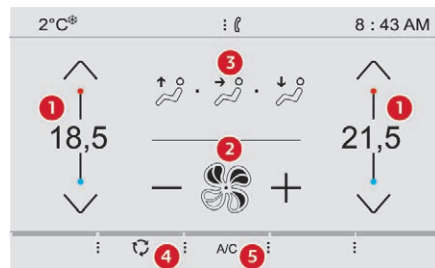
For more information on **Recirculation of interior air**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Dual-zone temperature-regulated manual air conditioning

The manual air conditioning operates with the engine running.

The temperature at the nozzles and vents is regulated by the system according to the temperature in the passenger compartment and the temperature setting.

Press the **Air conditioning** menu button to display the system controls page.



1. Temperature adjustment on driver/passenger side.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air intake/Air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning on/off.

## Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature independently of one another.

- ☞ Press one of the arrows **1** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature. It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3 in the settings for left and right.

## Air flow adjustment

- ☞ Press one of the buttons **2** (- or +) to decrease or increase the speed of the air booster fan.




The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

**!** Avoid driving for too long without ventilation – risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

## Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the buttons **3**.

-  Windscreen.
-  Footwells.
-  Central and side vents.

Illumination of the button indicates the presence of pulsed air in the specified direction.

For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

## Air intake/Air recirculation

For more information on **Recirculation of interior air**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

- ☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

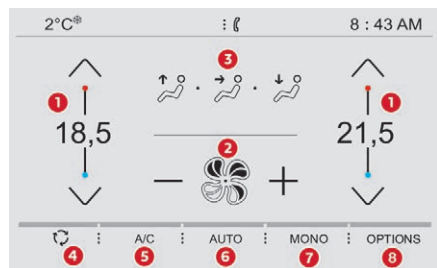
When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning function is activated.

**i** The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited. To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air. Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

## Dual-zone automatic air conditioning

The air conditioning operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on. Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.

Press the button for the **Air Conditioning** menu to display the page of controls for the air conditioning system.



1. Temperature adjustment on driver/passenger side.
2. Air flow adjustment.
3. Air distribution adjustment.
4. Air intake/Air recirculation.
5. Air conditioning on/off.
6. Automatic mode.
7. Mono function.
8. Access to the secondary page.

## Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature independently of one another.

- ☞ Press one of the arrows **1** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature. It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3 in the settings for left and right.

## Air flow adjustment

- ☞ Press one of the buttons **2** (- or +) to decrease or increase the speed of the fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

"- - -" is displayed.

**!** Avoid driving too long without ventilation – risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

## Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the buttons **3**.



Windscreen.



Footwells.



Central and side vents.

Illumination of the button indicates the presence of pulsed air in the specified direction.

In AUTO mode, the three buttons are off.

## Air intake/Air recirculation

For more information on **Recirculation of interior air**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.

It enables you to:

- lower the temperature, in summer,

- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.
- ☞ Press button **5** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air conditioning function is activated.

**i** The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited. To obtain cool air more quickly, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air. Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

## Automatic comfort programme

- ☞ Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** to activate or deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

The air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

- ☞ Go to the secondary page by pressing button **8 "OPTIONS"** to adjust the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of the available settings.



- ☞ To change the current setting, press the button several times in succession to access the desired mode:

**"Soft"**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

**"Normal"**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

**"Fast"**: provides strong and effective air flow.

This setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, on deactivation of AUTO mode, the last selected setting remains.

Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if deactivated.

**i** In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment. On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

You can always choose to change a setting manually. In this case, the automatic comfort programme is deactivated.

- ☞ Press the "**AUTO**" button **6** to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

## "Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).

- ☞ Press the button **7** to activate/deactivate the "Mono" function.

The function is deactivated automatically when the passenger uses their temperature setting buttons.

## "Rear" function

This function gives rear passengers access to the adjustment controls and enables:

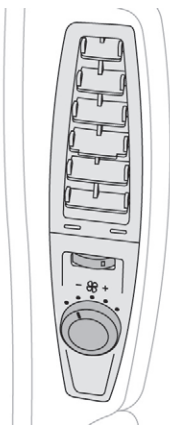
- air conditioned air to be circulated by the 2<sup>nd</sup> row outlets,
- recirculated interior air to be circulated by the 3<sup>rd</sup> row outlets,

From the secondary page of the **Air conditioning** menu:



- ☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the "Rear" function.

## Settings for passengers in the 2nd row



- ☞ Turn the top dial to open or close the rear vent.
- ☞ Turn the lower dial to decrease (to the left) or increase (to the right) the air flow.

## Settings for passengers in the third row



- ☞ Press on the vent's shutter.
- ☞ Adjust the air flow of both vents using the dial with four positions (off, low, medium, high).
- ☞ Direct the vent by turning the shutter.

## Ventilation with ignition on function

With the ignition on, you can use the ventilation system and access the **Air conditioning** menu to control the air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment.

This function is available for a few minutes, depending on the state of charge of the battery of your vehicle.

This function does not activate the air conditioning.

You can make use of the residual heat in the engine to warm the passenger compartment using the temperature setting buttons.

## Recirculation of interior air

The intake of exterior air helps avoid and eliminate misting of the windscreen and side windows.

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.

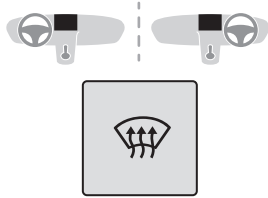
**i** When required, this function can also be used to speed up the heating or cooling of the passenger compartment.

- ☞ Press button **4** to recirculate the interior air or to permit the intake of outside air.

When the indicator lamp is on, the air recirculation function is activated, the intake of exterior air is inhibited.

**!** Avoid the prolonged use of interior air recirculation – Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

## Front demist – defrost



### On/Off

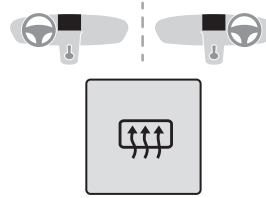
- ☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

The system automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

- ☞ To switch off demisting/defrosting, press this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

**i** With Stop & Start, when demisting/defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

## Rear screen demist – defrost



### On/Off

- ☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive electrical consumption.

- ☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.



Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

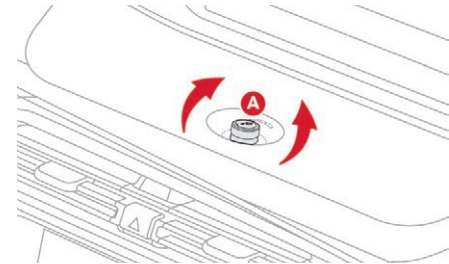
**i** Rear screen demisting/defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

## Fragrance diffuser

Diffuses a fragrance in the passenger compartment from the central air vents.

**i** Your diffuser is fitted with an empty cartridge when your vehicle is delivered. You therefore need to install a cartridge before use.

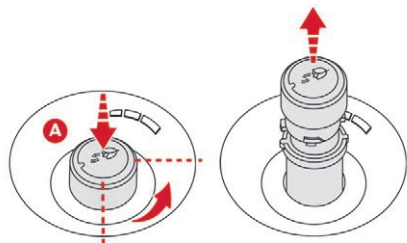
## Flow adjustment



- ☞ Turn button **A** to adjust (left to decrease, right to increase) or stop (completely to the left) the fragranced air flow. The central vents must be open.

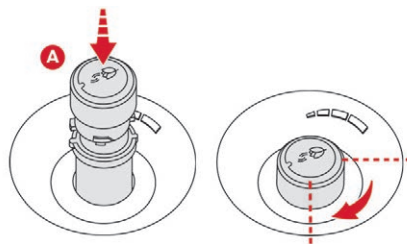
**i** The average use per cartridge is 3 months at the rate of one hour per day.

## Removing the diffuser



- ☞ Push button **A** by turning it a quarter turn completely to the end.
- ☞ Remove the diffuser from the dashboard
- ☞ Replace your cartridge (see "Replacing a cartridge").

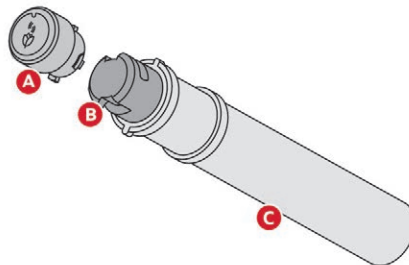
## Inserting the diffuser



After installing or replacing the cartridge:

- ☞ put the diffuser back in its housing,
- ☞ turn it a quarter of a turn to the right.

## Replacing a cartridge

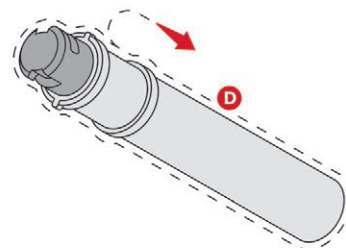


The diffuser refill includes a cartridge **B** and its sealed cover **C**.

- ☞ Remove the protective film **D**.
- ☞ Place the head of cartridge **B** on the diffuser button **A**.
- ☞ Turn it a quarter turn to lock it on the button and remove the cover.
- ☞ Insert the diffuser in its housing.

You can replace cartridges at any time and keep the cartridges already started in their original cover.

## Diffuser button



The diffuser button **A** is independent of the cartridge. The cartridges are delivered without the button **A**.

The diffuser button **A** can only be fixed into the central control panel with a cartridge. Therefore always keep the button **A** and a cartridge.

Depending on the country, replacement cartridges are available online or from CITROËN dealers, as well as any qualified workshop.

Storage is provided for the cartridges and covers in the glove box.

**!** For safety reasons, only use the cartridges designed for the system. Retain the cartridge sealed covers which serve as packaging if the cartridge is not used.

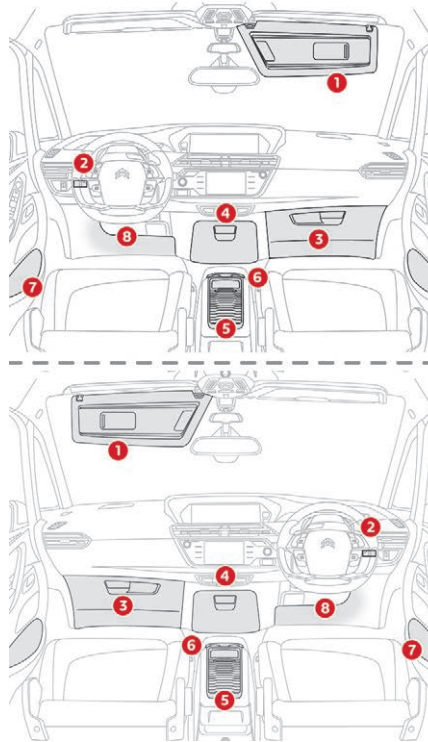
Never refill or disassemble the cartridges. Keep cartridges out of the reach of children or pets.

Avoid contact with the skin or eyes.

In the event of ingestion, consult a doctor, showing them the product packaging or label.

Never install or remove a cartridge while driving.

## Front fittings

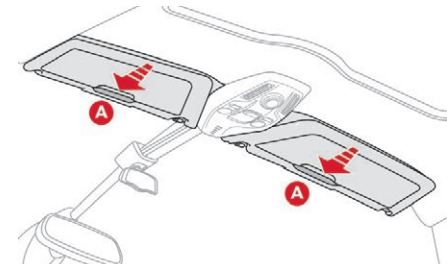


1. Sun visor.
2. Ticket holder.
3. Glove box.
4. Central storage.  
It includes the electric and audio sockets.
5. High console with closed storage box, low console or removable console.
6. Cup holder.
7. Door pockets.
8. Storage compartment below the steering wheel.  
(Vehicle documentation.)

3

## Sliding sun visors

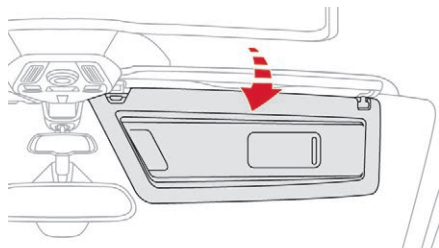
### Sliding window blinds



The sliding window blinds can protect you from brightness and sunlight. They can be adjusted manually.

- ☞ Slide the window blind to the required position by pushing zone A.

## Sun visor supports



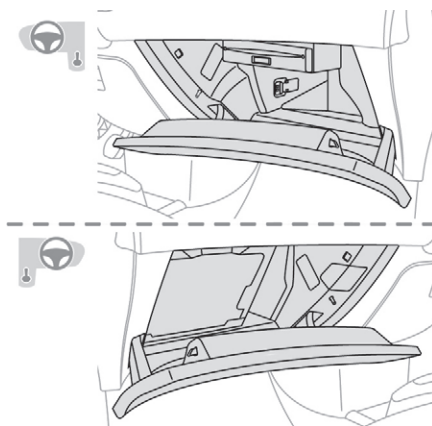
The window blinds are extended via the sun visor supports.  
Fold the support downwards to avoid glare from ahead.

In case of glare through the door windows, release the support from its central fixing and turn it to the side.

The supports are fitted with a locking system on their central fixing when rolling up the window blind. To remove or replace the support, it must be positioned vertically.

**i** Do not attach or hang heavy objects on the slide rail of the sun visor blinds.

## Glove box



Depending on the equipment, it may include a CD player.

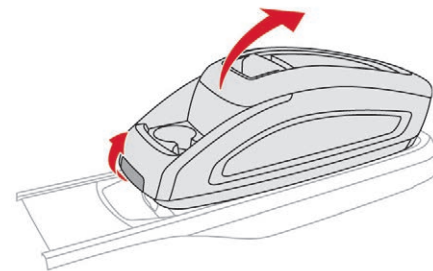
☞ To open the glove box, raise the handle. It is illuminated when the lid is opened. It is cooled by a ventilation nozzle that can be closed manually.

It is directly linked to your vehicle's air conditioning system and is supplied with fresh air whatever the setting required in the passenger compartment.  
The cooling of your glove box only functions when the engine is running and the air conditioning is on.

## Portable console

The portable console is a removable storage space fixed to the low centre console. It includes a sliding flap, an open storage compartment and two cup holders.

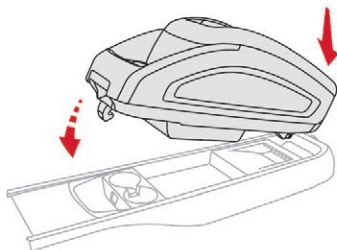
### Taking out the portable console



- ☞ Pull the unlocking control located at the front of the console.
- ☞ With one hand, lift the front part of the console.
- ☞ With the other hand, take the rear part to free the portable console.

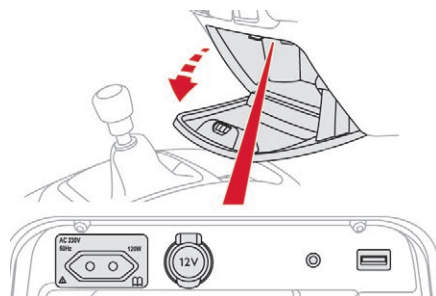
**i** If it is not fixed to its support, the portable console must be stored in the boot. It could turn into a projectile in the event of sudden braking or serious impact.

## Putting the portable console back in place



- ☞ Perform the steps in reversed order. Check that the console is properly locked.

## Central storage



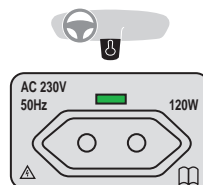
- ☞ Pull the handle and lower the lid to open the central storage.  
It is illuminated when opened.

Deactivate the lighting by pressing the button at the top.

Depending on equipment, this may include:

- 1 x 230 V socket,
- 1 x 12 V socket,
- 1 x USB port,
- 1 x JACK socket.

## 230 V/50 Hz socket



A 230 V/50 Hz socket (max. power: 120 W) is fitted in the central storage.

To use the socket:

- ☞ open the central storage,
- ☞ check that the indicator lamp is on green,
- ☞ connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, baby food warmer, etc.).

This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode with Stop & Start. In the event of a fault with the socket, the green indicator lamp flashes.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

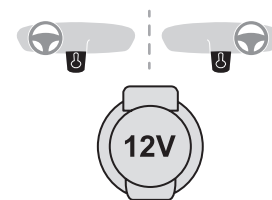
**!** Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension or multi-way connector).

Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).

Do not use a device with a metal case (electric shaver, etc.).

As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green indicator lamp goes off.

## 12 V socket

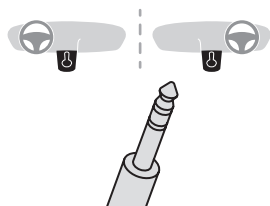


- ☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

**!** Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (otherwise this could cause damage to your portable device).

**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

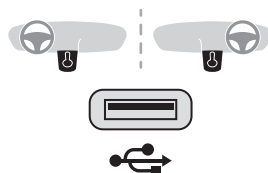
## JACK socket



To connect a portable device so that you can listen to your music files via the vehicle's speakers.  
The management of the files is done using your portable device.

**i** For more information on **Audio and telematics** and in particular the use of this equipment, refer to the corresponding section.

## USB port

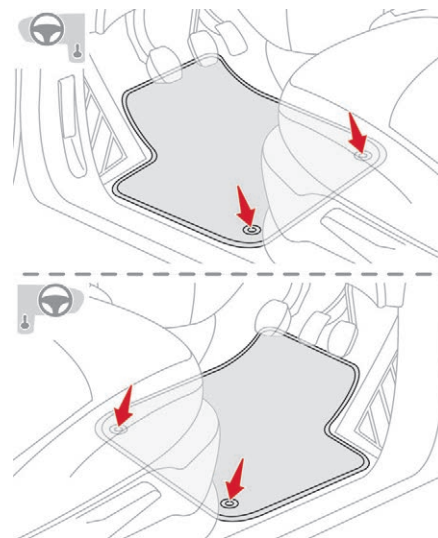


The USB port is located in the central storage. It allows the connection of a portable device or a USB memory stick. It reads the audio files which are sent to your audio system and played via the vehicle's speakers. You can manage these files using the steering mounted or touch screen controls.

**i** When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically. A message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle.

## Mats

### Fitting



When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet attached. The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

## Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

## Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:

- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ put on the fixings again by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

**!** To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

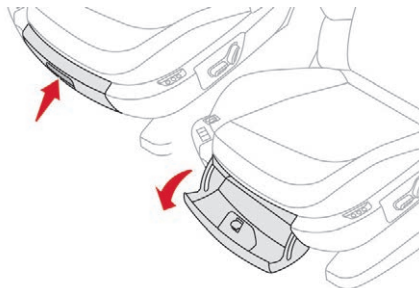
The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.

The mats approved by CITROËN have two fixings located below the seat.

## Storage boxes

Depending on equipment, there are storage boxes located under the front seats.

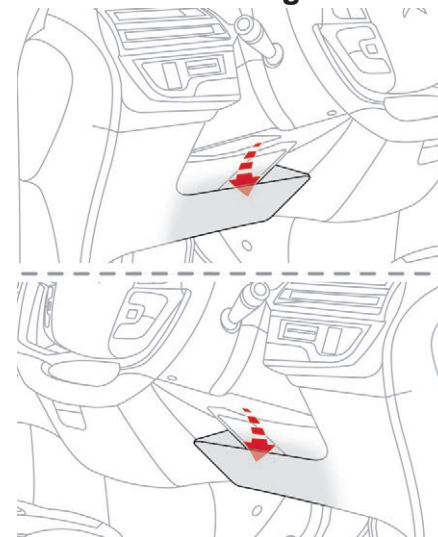
### Opening



- ☞ Lift the handle and lower the storage box cover.

**!** Do not place heavy objects in the storage boxes.

## Storage compartment below the steering wheel



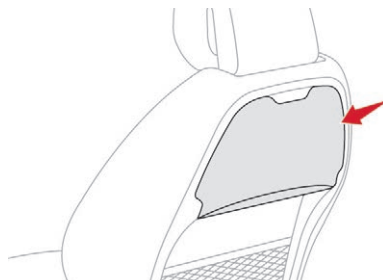
This storage below the steering wheel is used to store the vehicle's on-board documentation.

3

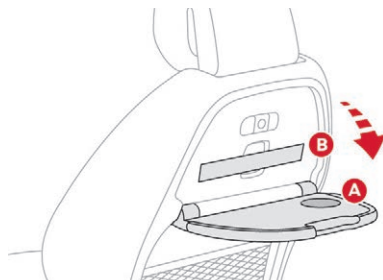
## Rear fittings

### Aircraft trays

#### Closed tray



#### Open tray

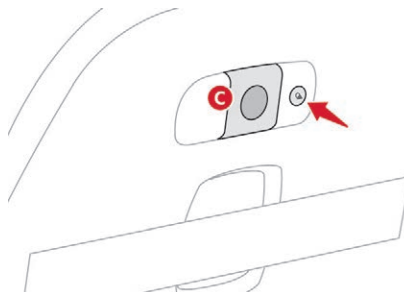


These trays, fixed to the back of the front seats, includes a recessed cup holder **A** and a retaining strap **B**.

- ☞ Pull the tray to lower it.
- ☞ To fold the tray away, pull it up to the locking latch.

For security reasons, these trays retract downwards if excessive pressure is exerted.

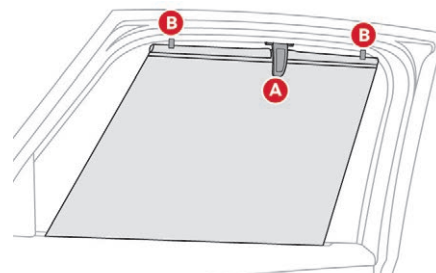
### Individual reading lamp



The reading lamps **C** may be integrated into the backrests of the front seats, behind the trays. They illuminate the top of the tray without disturbing the other passengers. They are only accessible when the tray is lowered.

- ☞ Press the "On/Off" button to switch the reading lamp on or off.

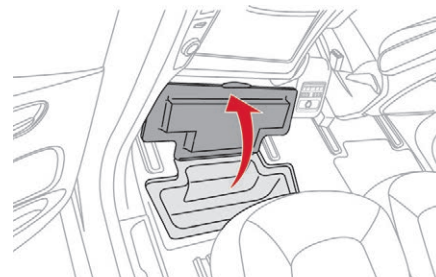
### Side blinds



Fitted to the windows in row 2, they protect the passenger compartment from the sun's rays.

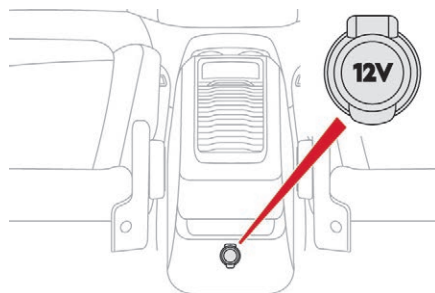
- ☞ Pull the tab **A** and anchor the blind on the hook **B**.

### Storage boxes



There are two storage boxes located beneath the rear passenger footwells. To open them, lift the cover by the notch.

## 12 V accessory socket

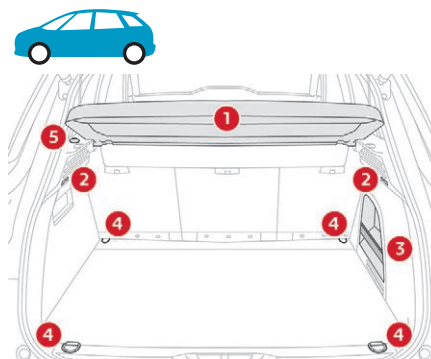


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (max power: 120 Watts), lift the cover and connect a suitable adaptor.

**!** Do not exceed the maximum power rating of the socket (risk of damage to your device).

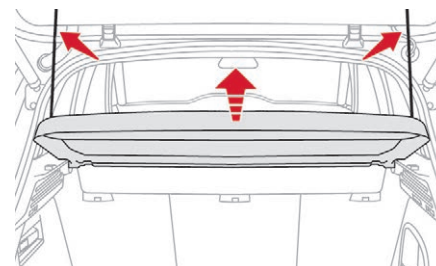
**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## Boot fittings



1. Rear shelf (see details opposite)
2. Hooks (see details opposite)
3. Strap
4. Stowing rings
5. 12 V socket (max power: 120 Watts)

## Rear shelf



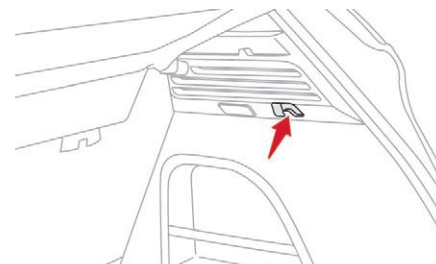
To remove the shelf:

- ☞ release the two cords,
- ☞ gently lift the shelf, then remove it.

There are several ways of storing it:

- either upright behind the front seats,
- or flat on the bottom of the boot.

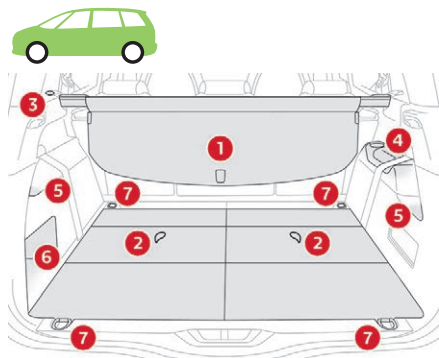
## Hooks



These can be used to secure shopping bags.

3

## Boot fittings



1. Load space cover
2. Concertina boards
3. 12 V socket (max power: 120 Watts)
4. Armrest with cup holder and storage compartment
5. Storage area of the load space cover
6. Open storage compartment
7. Low stowing rings

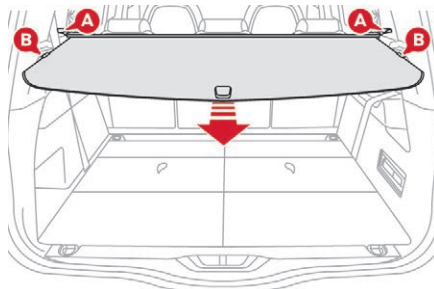
## Load space cover



In 5-seat configuration, it is installed behind the second row seats, with the third row seats stored folded away.

In 7-seat configuration, it is stored behind the third row seats.

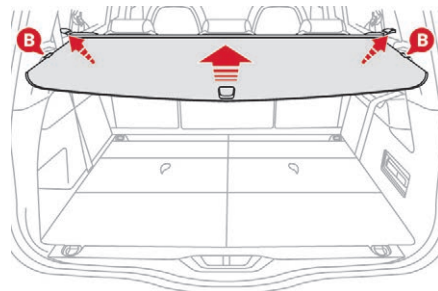
### Installation



- ☞ Position the left and right ends of the roller in cut-outs **A**, with the mobile flap at the front.
- ☞ Pull out the roller until it reaches the boot pillars.
- ☞ Insert the guides of the roller into the rails in pillars **B**.

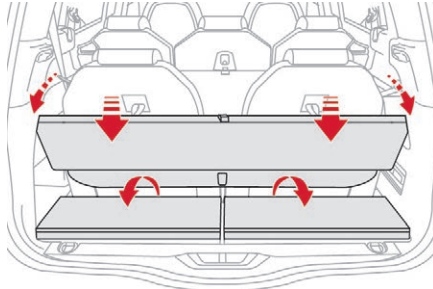
**i** The mobile flap avoids interference with the second row passengers when the seats are in the "comfort" position.

### Removal



- ☞ Remove the guides of the roller from the rails in pillars **B**.
- ☞ Guide the roller as it reels in.
- ☞ Unlock the roller by pressing one of the handles located at the ends of the roller bracket.

## Storage behind the 3<sup>rd</sup> row seats



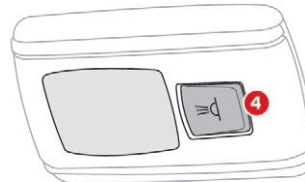
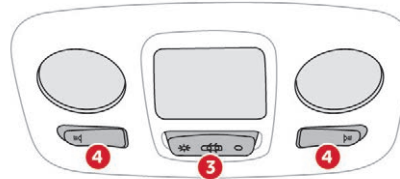
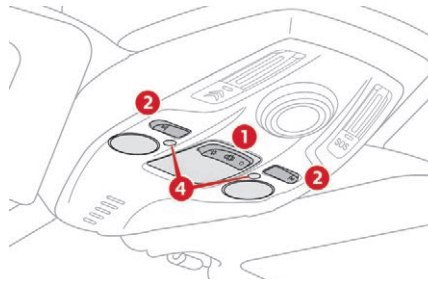
- ☞ Make sure that the 3<sup>rd</sup> row seats are folded.
- ☞ Fold the first two concertina boards.
- ☞ Position the roller in the space located above the armrest, side by side, tilting it slightly.
- ☞ Slide the roller to the stop position, until it reaches the notches arranged at the back of the boot, with the two hinges facing down.
- ☞ Unfold the third row seats.

The folded concertina boards can be placed in the horizontal or upright position.

To fold the 3<sup>rd</sup> row seats with the roller stored at the back, it is necessary to raise the concertina boards in order to give access to the seat unlocking controls (red straps).

**!** When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

## Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps
3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps

## Front – rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when the electronic key is removed from the reader,
- when opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It will only be possible to switch on the door mirror spotlamps if the courtesy lamp is in this position.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

## Front – rear map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

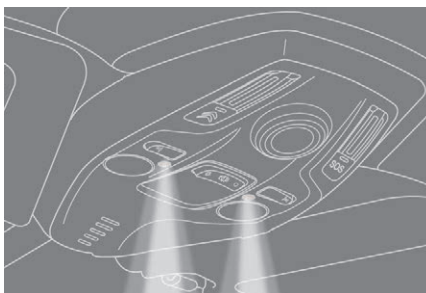
! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

- i In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:
- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
  - in energy economy mode, approximately thirty seconds,
  - with the engine running, unlimited.

## Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

## Switching on

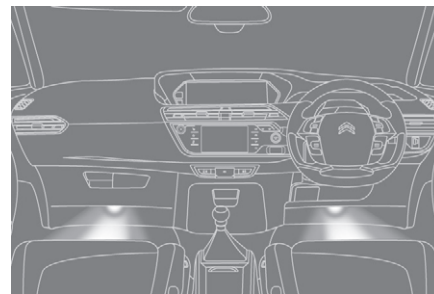
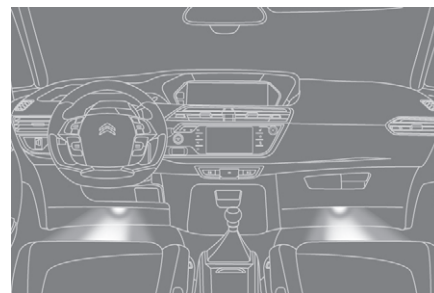


At night, the dashboard, centre console and courtesy lamps come on automatically once the sidelamps are lit.

The interior ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

The interior ambient lighting can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu by selecting the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Comfort**" and "**Mood lighting**".

## Footwell lighting



The soft lighting provided by the footwell lamps improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

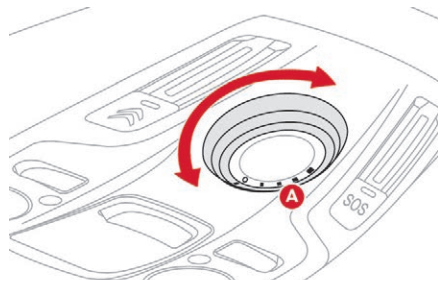
## Switching on

Its operation is the same as the courtesy lamps. The lamps come on when one of the doors is opened.

## Panoramic glass sunroof

It has an electrically-controlled blind.

### Opening/closing the roof blind



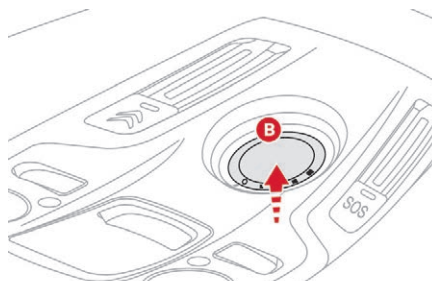
- ☞ Turn control **A** to begin sliding the roof blind to the desired position (positions **1** to **4**).
- ☞ To close the roof blind, turn control **A** to position **0**.

### Safety anti-pinch

This blind has an anti-pinch function. At the end of its travel, if the blind meets an obstacle while closing, it stops and moves back slightly. If the blind encounters an obstacle, you should reverse the movement by using the control.

**!** The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly. Be particularly aware of children when operating the blind.

### Reinitialisation



In the event of a failure or battery disconnection while the blind is moving or soon after it stops, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised:

- ☞ put the blind in the closed position,
- ☞ press the button **B** for about two seconds.

## Lighting control stalk

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

If one or more lamps fails, a message asks you to check the lamp or lamps concerned.

### Driving abroad Halogen headlamps

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling on-coming drivers. Contact a CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop.

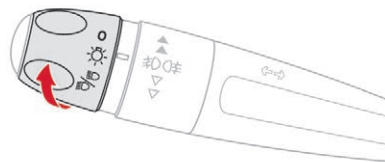
### Xenon headlamps

The design of the dipped beam headlamps allows, without modification, driving in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country in which your vehicle was sold.

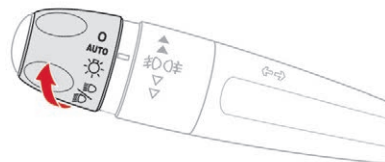
## Main lighting



### Without AUTO lighting



### With AUTO lighting





## Selection of main lighting mode

Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

**O** Lighting off (ignition off)/Daytime running lamps (engine running).

**AUTO** Automatic illumination of headlamps. Daytime running lamps/Dipped beam/Main beam.

 Sidelamps.

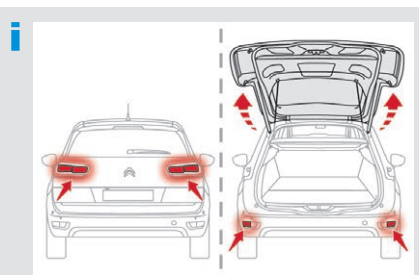
 Dipped or main beam headlamps.

## Headlamp dipping

Pull the stalk towards you to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps or to activate automatic headlamp dipping. In the lighting off and sidelamps modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps temporarily ("headlamp flash"), for as long as the stalk is kept pulled.

## Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is switched on.

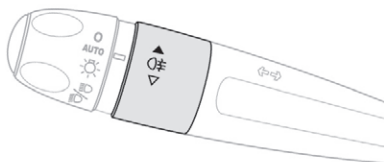


The sidelamps and the rear direction indicators are situated on the tailgate. During lighting, the opening of the tailgate provokes the automatic switching of these lamps towards the fitted lamps in the rear bumpers to maintain the safety of the vehicle.

## Foglamps

They operate with the dipped and main beam headlamps.

### With rear foglamps only

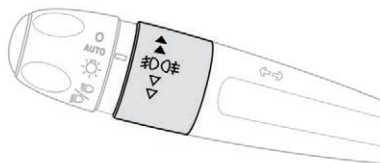


### Rear foglamps

- ☞ Turn the sensor ring forwards to switch on the foglamps.
- ☞ Turn the sensor ring backwards to switch off the foglamps.

**i** If the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the rear foglamps also switch off.

### With front and rear foglamps



### Front and rear foglamps

Turn and release the ring:

- ☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,
- ☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.

- ☞ once backwards to switch off the rear foglamps,
- ☞ backwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lights are switched off automatically or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

- ☞ Turn the ring backwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

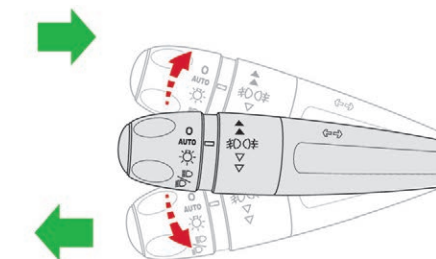
**!** Opening the tailgate prevents the foglamps lighting up. Opening the tailgate when the lamps are on switches them off automatically along with the indicator lamp in the instrument panel. On closing the tailgate, they do not light up automatically: it will be necessary to use the control.

**!** In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow. In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

**i** **Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off**  
On switching off the ignition, all of the lighting turns off immediately, except for dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

**i** **Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off**  
To reactivate the lighting control stalk, rotate ring **A** to the 0 position – lamps off, then to the desired position. On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on. It will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge in battery (entering energy economy mode).

## Direction indicators (flashers)



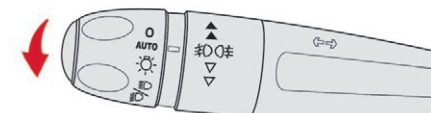
- ☞ Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- ☞ Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

## Three flashes

- ☞ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

## Parking lamps

Vehicle side marking by illumination of the sidelamps on the traffic side only.



- ☞ Depending on version, within one minute of switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk up or down depending on the traffic side (for example, when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk downwards; the left-hand sidelamps come on).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and illumination of the corresponding direction indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

## Guide-me-home headlamps



The temporary illumination of the dipped beam headlamps after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

### Manual

#### Activation

- ☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk.
- ☞ Another "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

#### Deactivation

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

### Automatic

With the "Automatic headlamp illumination" function activated (lighting control stalk in the AUTO position), under low ambient light, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Activation, deactivation and the duration of the guide-me-home lighting are set in the touch screen's **Driving** menu.

Select **"Guide-me-home lighting"** to activate or deactivate the function.

To set the duration, select the icon of the **"Guide-me-home lighting"** function.

## Automatic illumination of headlamps

When the ring is at the **"AUTO"** position and a low level of ambient light is detected by the sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They can also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

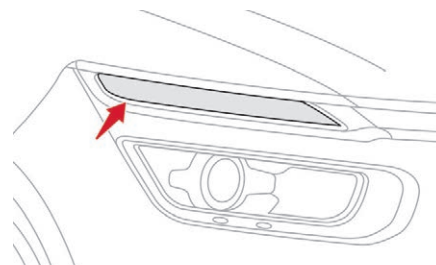
## Operating fault

**SERVICE** In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically. Do not cover the sunshine sensor, integrated with the rain sensor and located at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

## Front daytime running lamps (LEDs)



They come on automatically when the engine is started, when the lighting control stalk is in position "0" or "AUTO".

## Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the door mirrors and rearward of the front doors.

## Switching on



When the courtesy lamp is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when removing the electronic key from the reader,
- when opening a door,

- when you use the remote control to locate the vehicle.

## Switching off

They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

## Exterior welcome lighting

The remote switching on of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated when the lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position and the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor is low.

## Switching on



Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

## Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

## Programming

The activation, deactivation and choice of welcome lighting duration are done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select "**Welcome lighting**" on the "**Vehicle settings**" tab.

Use the arrows or the slider to adjust the lighting duration.

## Automatic headlamp dipping

System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the exterior light level and the traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

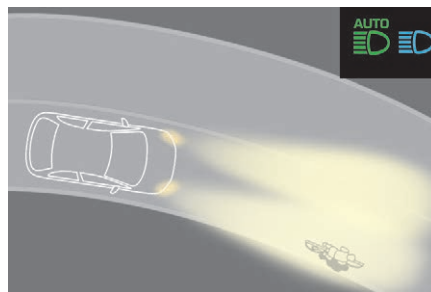
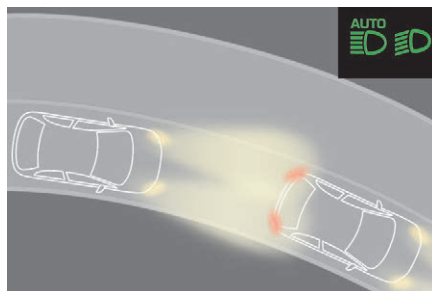
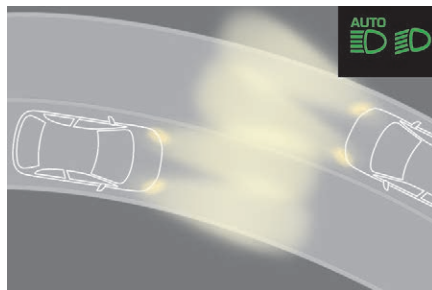
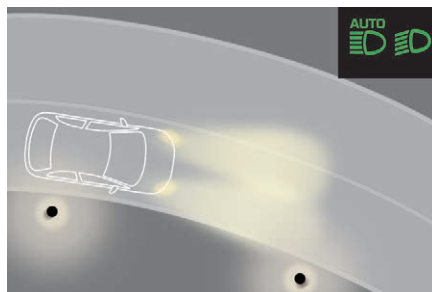


This system is a driving aid.

The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.



The system will be operational as soon as you have exceeded 16 mph (25 km/h). If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.



## Activation/Deactivation



Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "AUTO" position.

- In the **Driving** menu, select the "Driving functions" tab then "Automatic headlamp dip".

## Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlights:



- dipped beam is kept on, these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.



If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:



- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

The system is deactivated when you switch on the foglamps or when the system detects thick fog.

When you switch off the foglamps or as soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.



- This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

## Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

- Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:
  - if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam,
  - if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the system, flash the headlamps again.

**i** The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:

- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.

The system is not able to detect:

- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

**!** Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

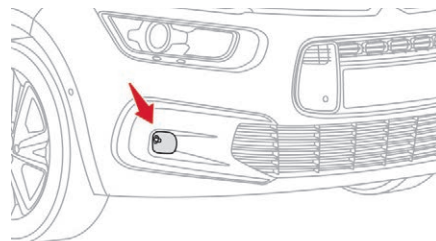
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

Clean the front bumper, especially around the radar, removing mud, snow, etc.

1. 5 people + maximum authorised load.
  - Intermediate setting.
2. Driver + maximum authorised load.
  - Intermediate setting.
3. 5 people + maximum authorised load in the boot.

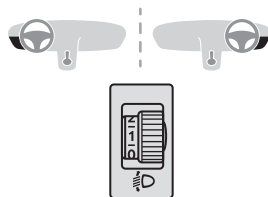
**i** The initial setting is position **0**.

## Cornering lighting



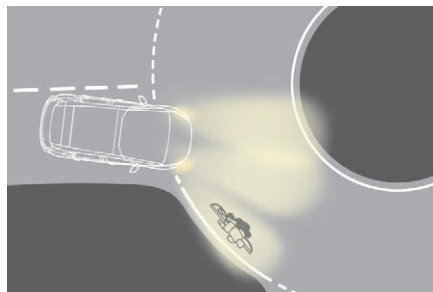
If your vehicle is equipped with it, this system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres, etc.).

## Headlamp adjustment

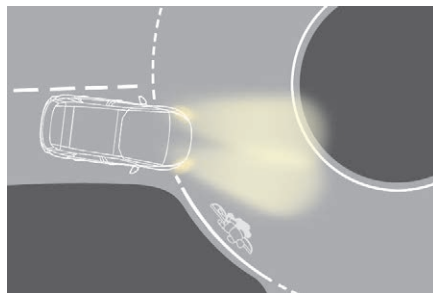


To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the headlamp beams should be adjusted for height according to the vehicle's load.

- 0.** 1 or 2 people in the front seats.
  - Intermediate setting.



with cornering lighting



without cornering lighting

## Switching on

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on,
- or
- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

## Switching off

The system does not operate:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel,
- above 25 mph (40 km/h),
- when reverse gear is engaged.

The cornering lighting can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu.

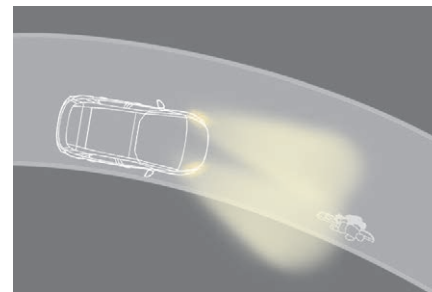
- ☞ Select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Driving lighting**" and "**Directional headlamps**".

## Directional lighting

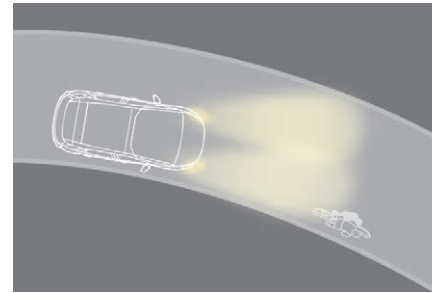
When the dipped or main beams are on, this function allows the light beam to better follow the road.

Associated with xenon lamps, this function improves the quality of your lighting while cornering.

- i** The system does not operate:
  - when stationary or at very low speeds,
  - when reverse gear is engaged.



with directional lighting



without directional lighting

## Operating fault



If a fault occurs, these warning lamps are displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The directional lighting can be activated or deactivated in the touch screen.

In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Driving lighting**" and "**Directional headlamps**".

## Wiper control stalk

### Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:

- automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers,
- rear wiper on engaging reverse gear.

**i** In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

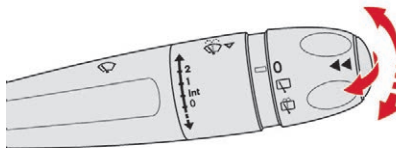
**!** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

### Manual controls

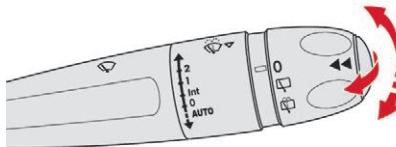


The windscreen wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

#### Without AUTO wiping



#### With AUTO wiping



## Windscreen wipers

**i** The front windscreen wiper system is fitted with a safety device that inhibits its function when detecting an obstacle such as ice or snow.

Wiping speed selection control: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

**2**

Fast wiping (heavy rain).

**1**

Normal wiping (moderate rain).

**I**

Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

**0**

Off.



Single wipe (press downwards or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

**AUTO**

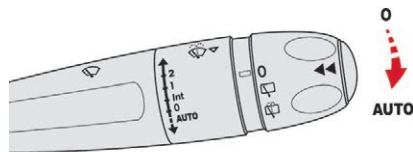
Automatic wiping (press down, then release).

Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

## Automatic windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rain without any action on the part of the driver.

### Switching on



**AUTO** Give a short downwards push to the control stalk. A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted. This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

### Switching off



Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

This indicator lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

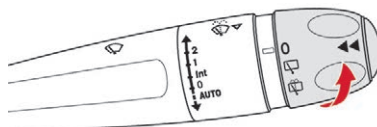
**i** The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

### Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode. Have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** Do not cover the rain sensor, combined with the sunshine sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror. Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash. In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

### Rear wiper



**!** In case of snow or hard frost, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Rear wiper selection ring:

- 0** Off.
-  Intermittent wipe.
-  Wash-wipe (set duration).

### Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation if the windscreen wiper is operating.

This function can be activated or deactivated in the **Driving** menu.

Select the "**Vehicle settings**" tab, then "**Comfort**" and "**Rear wiper in reverse**".

**!** In the event of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the vehicle parameters menu.

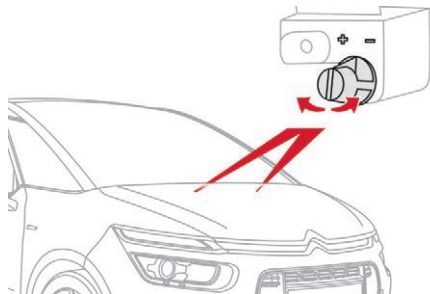
## Front screenwash and headlamp wash

### Screenwash and washer jets

- ☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you. The screenwash and then the wiper operate for a fixed duration.

A few moments after releasing the screenwash control, there is one last wipe of the screen to wipe away any excess.

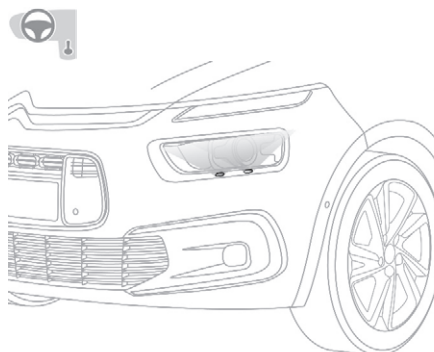
### Washer jet adjustment



The front screenwash includes a washer jet height adjustment device.

If you wish to change the factory setting, turn the screw of each washer jet anticlockwise, towards the "+" to raise the jet or clockwise, towards the "-", to lower it.

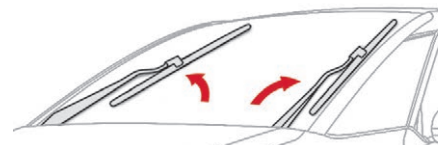
### Headlamp wash



The headlamp washers operate while the vehicle is moving and the dipped beams are on. However, to reduce the consumption of the screenwash fluid, the headlamp washers only operate with every seventh use of the screenwash or every 25 miles (40 km) during a given journey.

### Special position of the windscreen wipers

This maintenance position allows you to release the front windscreen wiper blades in order to clean their rubber inserts or to replace the blades. It can also be useful in winter to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.



- ☞ In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.

When the system is no longer powered, at least one minute after the ignition is switched off, it is possible to move the arms manually.

- ☞ To park the wiper blades again, gently fold the arms onto the windscreen, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper stalk.

**i** To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

**!** The arms must only be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## General safety recommendations

**!** Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

**!** For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

**!** Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

### **!** We draw your attention to the following points:

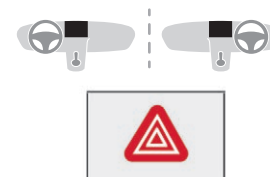
- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

### **!** Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a CITROËN dealer for the specifications of compatible transmitters (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

5

## Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.

They switch off automatically when you next accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

## Horn



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

## Emergency or assistance call



### Localised Emergency Call



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds.  
The flashing LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Localised Emergency Call" call centre\*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off.

The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.  
It goes off at the end of the call.

"Localised Emergency Call" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language\*\*, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched\*\*. In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

- \* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.
- \*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.  
The list of countries covered and Telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

### Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.

If the indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.

If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.

In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.

Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

## Localised Assistance Call



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made\*\*.

Immediately pressing this button again cancels the request.

The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

\*\* According to the geographic coverage of "Localised Emergency Call", "Localised Assistance Call" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and of Telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

## Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons, followed by pressing "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Localised Emergency Call" and "Localised Assistance Call" buttons again, followed by a press on "Localised Assistance Call" to confirm.

**i** If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

**i** For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of Telematic services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

**i** If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

## Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic stability control integrating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC).

## Definitions

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems improve the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contribute towards improved control in corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.

The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.

The EBFD system manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

### Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system enables you to reach the optimum braking pressure more quickly and therefore reduce the stopping distance.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. This is felt by a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in the effectiveness of the braking.

### Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

This system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

### Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

### Intelligent traction control ("Snow motion")

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control**.

This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

**i** The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of grip.

### Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)



When lit up continuously, this warning lamp indicates a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.



If this warning lamp comes on, in conjunction with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, an audible signal and a message, it means that the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) is defective.

**You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.**

In both cases, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

**i** When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.

**i** When operating under normal conditions, the ABS may cause the brake pedal to vibrate slightly.

**! In emergency braking, press the brake pedal hard and maintain this pressure.**

**!** After an impact, have these systems checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Anti-slip regulation (ASR)/ Dynamic stability control (DSC)

### Operation

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started. They come into operation in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory.



This is indicated by flashing of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

### Deactivation of the ASR

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate the ASR system, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Reactivate the system when grip conditions allow.

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Traction control**".

Deactivation is confirmed by the display of a message.

The ASR system no longer acts on the operation of the engine or the brakes in the event of an involuntary change of trajectory.

### Reactivation of the ASR

The system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h).

Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it manually:

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Traction control**".

### Operating fault



The illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that there is a fault with these systems.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

### **! ASR/DSC**

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations, not only about the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components but also the assembly and repair procedures used by CITROËN dealers.

To benefit in full from the effectiveness of these systems in wintry conditions, the vehicle must be fitted with four snow tyres, allowing the vehicle to retain neutral behaviour on the road.

## Seat belts

### Front seat belts

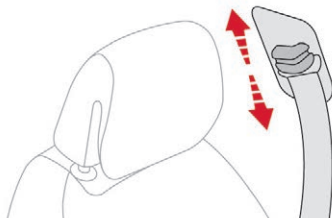
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact. Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.

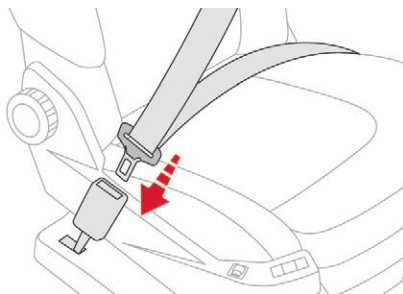
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

### Adjusting the height of the front belt return



- ☞ To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze the control and slide it up or down to the notch desired.

### Fastening

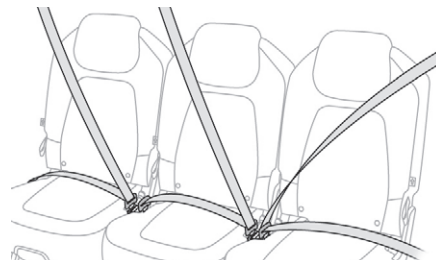


- ☞ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

### Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

### 2nd row rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats is fitted with a three-point seat belt with inertia reel and force limiter (except for the centre rear seat).

### 2<sup>nd</sup> row rear lateral seat belts (storage)

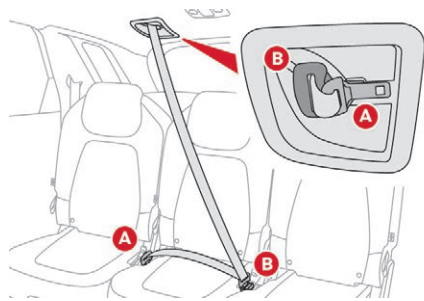


Guide the strap as it reels in and take the tongue to the magnet at the lateral anchorage point.

## 2<sup>nd</sup> row rear central seat belt

The seat belt for the rear central position is integrated into the roof.

### To install



- ☞ Pull the strap and insert tongue **A** into the right buckle.
- ☞ Insert tongue **B** into the left buckle.
- ☞ Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

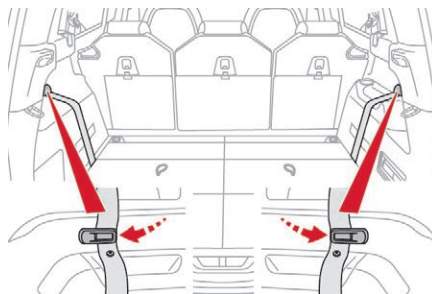
### Removal and storage

- ☞ Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the button on buckle **A**.
- ☞ Guide the strap as it reels in and take tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

**!** Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts check that the lateral belts are properly tensioned and fasten the tongues to their anchoring point. The central seat belt must be completely reeled in.

## 3<sup>rd</sup> row rear seat belts

### To install



- ☞ Detach the seat belt strap from its retention loop located in the boot side trim.
- ☞ Pull the strap and insert the tongue into the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

## Removal and storage

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- ☞ Fasten the strap, flat, to the retention loop.

**!** Ensure seat belts are always fastened when not in use.

## Seat belt not fastened/unfastened alerts



The instrument panel includes the seat belts not fastened warning lamp **A** as well as the seat belts not unfastened identification warning lamp **B**. When the system detects that a seat belt is unfastened or fastened, warning lamp **A** lights up as well as the corresponding dot(s) in warning lamp **B**.

## Front seat belts not fastened alert

When the ignition is switched on, warning lamp **A** and the corresponding dots in warning lamp **B** come on if the driver and/or front passenger have not fastened their seat belts.

At a speed above 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, associated with an audible signal, for two minutes. Beyond this period of time, the warning lamps stay on continuously until the seat belts are fastened.

## Rear seat belts not fastened alert

When the ignition is switched on, with the engine running or the vehicle moving above 6 mph (10 km/h), warning lamp **A** and the corresponding dots in warning lamp **B** come on for around thirty seconds, if one or more rear passengers have not fastened their seat belts.

## Seat belts unfastened alert

After the ignition is switched on, warning lamp **A** and the corresponding dots in warning lamp **B** come on if the driver and/or one or more passengers unfasten their seat belts. These warning lamps flash for 30 seconds, accompanied by an audible signal. Beyond this period of time, the warning lamps stay on continuously until the seat belts are fastened.

## Advice

- ! The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off. Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys. Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not fulfil their role fully. The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use. The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly. After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

## ! Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.

The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

## ! Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never allow a child to travel on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

### ! Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

Have your seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

### ! In the event of an impact

**Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact**, the pyrotechnic pretensioner may be deployed before and independently of the airbags. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belts system checked and, if necessary, replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Airbags

### General information

This system contributes towards improving the safety of passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the centre rear passenger belt).

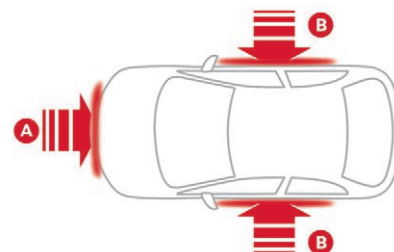
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the event of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the passengers,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

### ! The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

### Impact detection zones

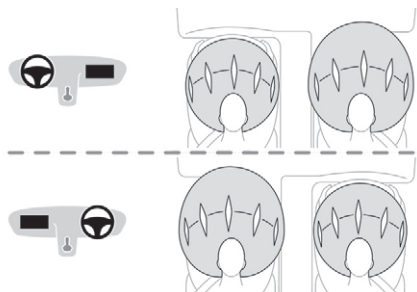


A. Front impact zone.

B. Side impact zone.

- i** The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.
- This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of an airbag may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

## Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.

The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

### Deployment

The airbags are deployed, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated\*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.

\* For more information on **Deactivating the front passenger airbag**, refer to the corresponding section.

The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

## Lateral airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder. Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

### Deployment

It is deployed unilaterally in the event of a severe side impact covering all or part of side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the front occupant of the vehicle and the corresponding door trim panel.

## Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head. Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

### Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle. The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

## Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

**!** In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

## Advice

**!** **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Fasten your seat belt, ensuring it is positioned correctly.

Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.

Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.

All work on the airbag systems must be carried out by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out.

The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

### **! Front airbags**

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries with deployment of the airbags.

### **! Curtain airbags**

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

### **! Lateral airbags**

Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the product range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer. Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary. The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

Such work must only be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## General points relating to child seats

**i** The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

**i** It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:

- "rearward facing" up to the age of 3,
- "forward facing" over the age of 3.

**!** Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

At the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.

At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

**!** Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.

Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

## Child seat at the rear

### "Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

## "Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on a **rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

## 3rd row seats



When a child seat is installed on a **rear passenger seat in the 3<sup>rd</sup> row**, move the seats in the 2<sup>nd</sup> row forward and straighten the backrest so that the child seat and the child's legs do not touch the seat in the 2<sup>nd</sup> row.

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on a **rear passenger seat in the 3<sup>rd</sup> row**,

## Child seat at the front

### "Rearward facing"



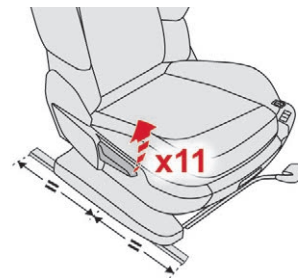
When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and lowest position, with the backrest straightened. Then pull the booster/height adjuster control 11 times.

**!** The front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed in case of airbag deployment.**

### "Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the vehicle's seat to the intermediate longitudinal and lowest position, with the backrest straightened. Then pull the booster/height adjuster control 11 times. Leave the passenger's airbag active.

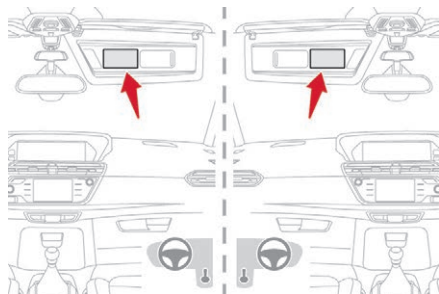


Passenger seat adjusted into the intermediate longitudinal and lowest position, then the booster/height adjuster control pulled 11 times.

## Deactivating the front passenger airbag

**!** Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag. This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.



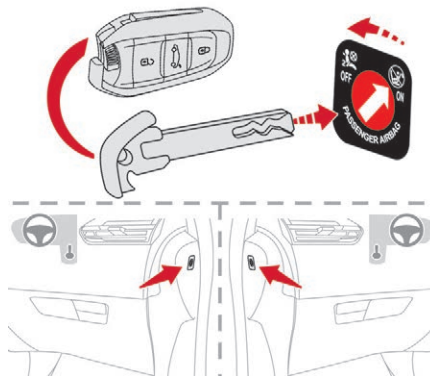


The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this advice. In line with current legislation, you will find this warning in all the required languages in the following tables.

## Passenger airbag OFF



## Passenger airbag deactivation switch



Only the front passenger airbag can be deactivated.

- ☞ **With the ignition off**, insert the key in the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- ☞ Turn it to the OFF position.
- ☞ Remove the key keeping the switch in the new position.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

**!** To ensure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.

## Reactivating the front passenger airbag

When you remove the "rearward facing" child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the **ON** position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.



When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

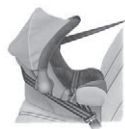
AR	لا يجب أبداً تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الراء على مقعد سيارة مجهز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه.
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNĚHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYNNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGSZÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.
LT	NIEKADA neįrengkite vaiko priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.

LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdekļi priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghalixx tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retenere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTELNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitve lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedišta koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLİKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

## Recommended child seats

Range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

### Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



#### L1

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"

Is installed in the "rearward facing" position.

### Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



#### L5

"RÖMER KIDFIX XP"

Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Is only installed on the outer rear seats.

The head restraint on the vehicle seat must be removed.

### Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



#### L6




"GRACO Booster"

The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Is only installed on the front passenger seat or on the outer rear seats.

## Installing a child seat attached with the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) in relation to the weight of the child and the seat in the vehicle.

Seat position			Weight of the child/indicative age			
			Groups 0 (b) and 0+ Birth to 13 kg	Group 1 9-18 kg	Group 2 15-25 kg	Group 3 22-36 kg
1 <sup>st</sup> row	Front passenger seat (c)					
	- fixed - height adjustable		U  U(R)	U  U(R)	U  U(R)	U  U(R)
2 <sup>nd</sup> row	Fixed outer rear seats and centre rear seat (d) Longitudinally-adjustable outer rear seats (d) (e)		U	U	U	U
3 <sup>rd</sup> row	Outer rear seats		U	U	U	U

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

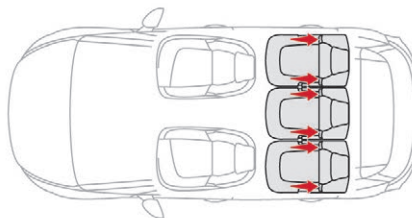
(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat or in the 3<sup>rd</sup> row. When installed in the 2<sup>nd</sup> row, they may prevent the use of the other seats.

(c) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child on this seat.

- (d) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough space for the child seat and the child's legs.
  - (e) To install a child seat on a rear seat, rearward facing or forward facing, adjust the rear seat to the fully back position with the backrest straightened.
- U:** seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using a seat belt and universally approved, rearward and/or forward facing, with the front seat which must be adjusted in the intermediate longitudinal position.
- U(R):** as with **U**, with the passenger seat that must be adjusted to the low position with 11 actions on the seat height control and in the intermediate longitudinal position.

## "ISOFIX" mountings

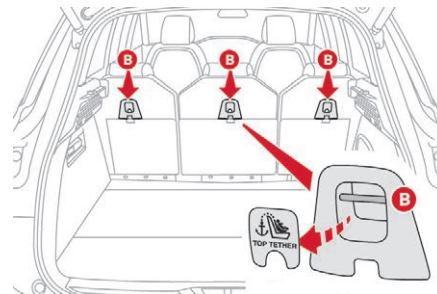
Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX regulations. The seats, shown below, are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:



There are three rings for each seat:



- two rings **A**, located between the vehicle's seat backrest and cushion, indicated by a marking,



- a ring **B**, located under a cover on the back of the top of the seat backrest, referred to as the **TOP TETHER** for fixing the upper strap. Its position is indicated by a marking.

Located on the back of the seat backrest, the **TOP TETHER** is used to secure the upper strap of child seats that have one. This device limits forward tipping of the child seat, in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.

The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are easily secured on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed),

## Safety

- detach the **TOP TETHER** cover by pulling its cut-out,
- pass the upper strap of the child seat over the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods,
- fix the hook of the upper strap to ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

**!** The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

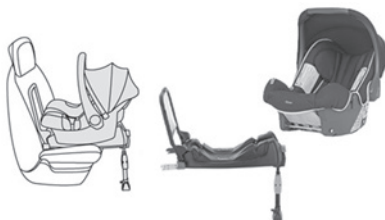
**i** For information on the possibilities for installing ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

## Recommended ISOFIX child seats

**i** Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

### RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base (size category: **E**)

**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

### Baby P2C Mini and its ISOFIX base (size categories: **C, D, E**)

**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



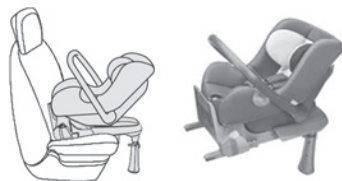
Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.

This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt.

In this case, only the shell is used and must be attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

**Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base (size classes: D, C, A, B, B1)**

**Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg**



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.  
 The base has a height adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.  
 This child seat can also be used "forward facing".  
 This child seat **cannot** be secured with a seat belt.  
 We recommend that you use the seat in the "rearward facing" position up to the age of 3 years.

**Summary tables of locations for ISOFIX child seats**

In line with European regulations, these tables indicate the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings.

In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.



	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	Infant car seat*		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Front passenger seat	Not ISOFIX									
Fixed rear outer seats	IL-SU**		IL-SU			IL-SU		X	IUF, IL-SU	
Longitudinally-adjustable rear outer seats	IL-SU**		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU (1)	IUF/IL-SU	
Centre rear seat	X		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU	IUF/IL-SU	

\* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

\*\* The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies all of the space on the rear bench seat.

**IUF:** seat suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX Universal seat, "Forward facing" secured using the upper strap on the upper ring of ISOFIX seating positions.

**IL-SU:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which can be:


- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg, or
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

**X:** seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or infant car seat for the weight group indicated.

**(1):** the outer row 2 seat must be adjusted to the maximum forward position minus 3 notches.

For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings** and in particular the upper strap, refer to the corresponding section.



	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months		Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+) Up to about 1 year			9-18 kg (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	Infant car seat*		rearward facing			rearward facing		forward facing		
ISOFIX size category	F	G	C	D	E	C	D	A	B	B1
Front passenger seat	Not ISOFIX									
Fixed rear outer seats	IL-SU**		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU
Longitudinally-adjustable rear outer seats	IL-SU**		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU
Centre rear seat	X		IL-SU			IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU		IUF/IL-SU
3 <sup>rd</sup> row rear seat	Not ISOFIX									

\* Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

\*\* The ISOFIX infant car seat, secured to the lower rings of an ISOFIX seat, occupies all of the space on the rear bench seat.

**IUF:** seat suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX Universal seat, "Forward facing" secured using the upper strap on the upper ring of ISOFIX seating positions.

**IL-SU:** seat suitable for the installation of an Isofix Semi-Universal seat which can be:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg, or
- an infant car seat fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

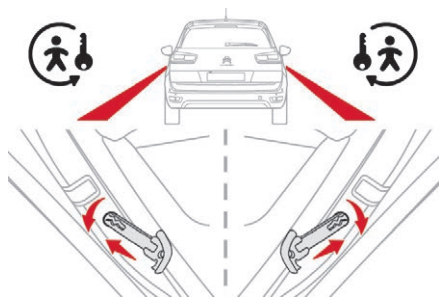
**X:** seat not suitable for the installation of a child seat or infant car seat for the weight group indicated.

For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings** and in particular the upper strap, refer to the corresponding section.

## Child lock

This mechanical system prevents opening of a rear door using its interior control. The control is located on the edge of each rear door and locking is independent for each door.

### Locking



- ☞ Using the integral ignition key, turn the control as far as it will go:
  - to the left on the left-hand rear door,
  - to the right on the right-hand rear door.

### Unlocking

- ☞ Using the integral ignition key, turn the control as far as it will go:
  - to the right on the left-hand rear door,
  - to the left on the right-hand rear door.

## Advice

- ! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it. Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys. When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary. **The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.** Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

### ! Children at the rear

At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:

- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, straighten its backrest. For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

### ! Children at the front

The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving. Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seats. Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

**! Installing a booster seat**

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

We recommend using a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

**! Additional protections**

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

## Driving advice

Observe driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.

Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.

As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.

On a long journey, taking a break every two hours is strongly recommended.

In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

**!** Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. There is a risk of poisoning and death!

In very severe wintry conditions (temperatures below -23°C), to guarantee correct operation and the longevity of the mechanical elements of your vehicle (engine and gearbox), the engine must be left running for 4 minutes before driving.

## Important!

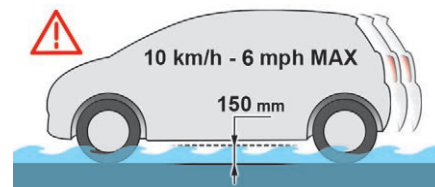
**!** Never drive with the parking brake applied  
– Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!

As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) – Risk of fire!

**!** Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

## Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:

- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling.  
In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## In case of towing

- ! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

## Side wind

- ☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

## Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.

As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.

- ☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.

The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.

In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



- ☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.



### New vehicle

Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least approximately 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

## Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

## Tyres

- ☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

## Lighting

- ☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.



For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.



Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing system is used.

## Anti-theft protection

### Electronic immobiliser

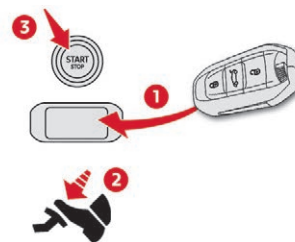
The keys contain an electronic chip which has a secret code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.

This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few moments after the ignition is switched off, and prevents starting of the engine by anyone who does not have the key.

In the event of a malfunction, you are informed by a message in the instrument panel screen. If this happens, your vehicle will not start; contact a CITROËN dealer if required.

## Starting/switching off the engine using the electronic key

### Starting the engine



- ☞ Place the gear selector at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.
- ☞ Place the electronic key in the reader.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal for vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or fully depress the clutch pedal for vehicles with a manual gearbox.
- ☞ Briefly press the **"START/STOP"** button. The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.

On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

For **Diesel vehicles**, in sub-zero temperatures the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed in the instrument panel. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering; a message warns you when this is needed.

- i** With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ☞ Place the gear selector at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.

- ☞ Press the **"START/STOP"** button. The engine stops and the steering column locks.

On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

- ☞ Remove the electronic key from the reader.

- i** If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

- !** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Emergency switch-off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

Press the **"START/STOP"** button for about three seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

- i** **Electronic key left in the reader**  
You will be warned by a message if the electronic key is still in the reader on opening the driver's door.

# Starting/switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Starting

## Starting the engine



- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, put the gear lever into neutral.
  - ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, fully depress the clutch pedal.
- or
- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **P** or **N**.
  - ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the brake pedal.

**i** The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key must be inside the vehicle. If the electronic key is not detected in this zone, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key into this zone so that the engine can be started. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected – Back-up starting" section.

- ☞ Press the **"START/STOP"** button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts.

On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

For **Diesel engines**, when the temperature is negative and/or the engine is cold, the start will only take place once the preheater warning lamp is off.



If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the **"START/STOP"** button:

- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, you should keep the clutch pedal fully depressed and not press the **"START/STOP"** button again until the engine is running.

- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, you should keep the brake pedal fully depressed and not press the **"START/STOP"** button again until the engine is running.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed in the instrument panel.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the **"START/STOP"** button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

**i** With **petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations for up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

**!** As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle while the engine is running.

## Switching off the engine

- ☞ Immobilise the vehicle, engine at idle.
- ☞ With a **manual gearbox**, preferably put the gear lever into neutral.

- ☞ With an **automatic gearbox**, preferably select mode **P** or **N**.
- ☞ With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button. The engine stops and the steering column locks.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column. On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock, but the gearbox locks in mode **P**.

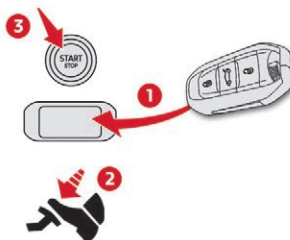
**i** If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

**!** Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

**!** Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

## Key not detected

### Back-up starting



When the electronic key is in the recognition zone and after pressing the "START/STOP" button, the engine does not start:

- ☞ Place the gear selector at **P** or **N** for vehicles with an automatic gearbox or neutral for vehicles with a manual gearbox.
- ☞ Place the electronic key in the back-up reader.
- ☞ Press the brake pedal on vehicles with an automatic gearbox, or fully depress the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button.

The engine starts.

## Back-up switch-off



When the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- ☞ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about three seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Emergency switch-off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about three seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

## Switching the ignition on (without starting)

With the electronic key in the reader or the Keyless Entry and Starting key inside the vehicle, pressing the "START/STOP" button, **with no action on the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on.

- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- ☞ Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

**i** With the ignition on, the system automatically changes to energy economy mode when required to maintain an adequate state of charge of the battery.

## Electric parking brake



The system provides, in automatic operation, the application of the parking brake on switching off the engine and release as the vehicle moves off.

The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever:

- by briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,
- by briefly **pushing** the control lever, while pressing the brake pedal, to release it.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

**!** The technology adopted for the electric parking brake does not allow the fitment of 15-inch wheels.

## Indicator lamp



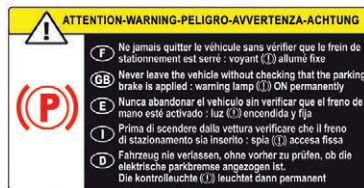
This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.

The indicator lamp in the control lever flashes during manual application or release. After applying the parking brake, the simultaneous flashing of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and in the control lever warns you to secure the immobilisation of the vehicle by engaging a gear (with a manual gearbox or by placing the selector at position **P** with an automatic gearbox or by placing a chock against one of the wheels (e.g. parking on a very steep slope or a steep slope with a weak battery).

**!** In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works. As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear (with a manual gearbox) or placing a chock against one of the wheels. Call a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Label on door panel



**!** Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed. If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

**!** Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

**!** When towing, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily laden, turn the wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear (with a manual gearbox) or place the gear selector at position **P** with an automatic gearbox. For towing, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

## Manual operation

### Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake:

- ☞ press the brake pedal,
- ☞ while maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

**i** If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

## Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ☞ pull briefly on the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

## Automatic operation

### Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.

### With a manual gearbox

- ☞ Fully depress the clutch pedal, engage 1<sup>st</sup> gear or reverse.
- ☞ Press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

### With an automatic gearbox

- ☞ Press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

**!** When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

## Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is **automatically applied when the engine is switched off**.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

**!** Automatic application does not take place if the engine stalls or goes into STOP mode of Stop & Start.

**i** With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake at any time using the control lever.

## Special cases

In some situations, you may need to operate the parking brake manually.

### Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake applied".

### Parking the vehicle with the brake released

**!** In very cold conditions (ice), it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.  
To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or fit the chocks against one of the wheels.

### Immobilisation of the vehicle with the parking brake released

- ☞ Switch off the engine.  
Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.
- ☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of the message "Parking brake released".

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.

## Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or during towing (caravan, recovery), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ☞ Start the engine.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.

- ☞ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
- ☞ Release the control lever.
- ☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ☞ Pull the control lever in the application direction for 2 seconds.



Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

- ☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.

Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

## Emergency braking

- ! The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place while the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.

The ABS and DSC systems ensure stability of the vehicle during emergency braking. If the emergency braking malfunctions, the message "Parking brake fault" will be displayed.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both warning lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

## Hill start assist

System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

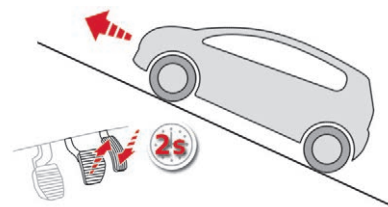
This system only operates when:

- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

- ! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist. If you need to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then verify that the parking brake warning lamp (and the warning lamp **P** on the electric parking brake control lever) are on continuously.

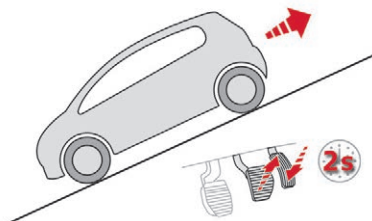
## Operation



**Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal:**

- provided you are in first gear or neutral with a manual gearbox.

- provided you are in mode **D** or **M** with an automatic gearbox.



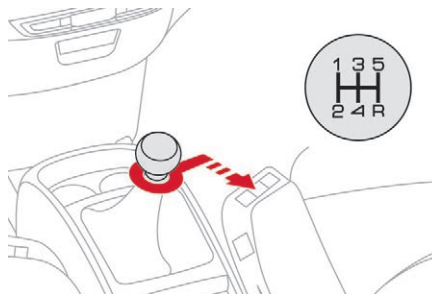
**Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.**

## Operating fault

If a fault in the system occurs, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an alert message. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.



## 5-speed manual gearbox Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ With the clutch pedal fully down, place the gear lever in neutral.
- ☞ Move the gear lever to the right then pull it back.

**!** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

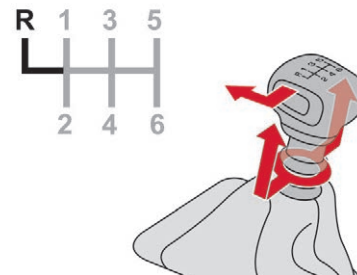
- i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
  - press the clutch pedal.

## 6-speed manual gearbox Engaging 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear

- ☞ Move the lever fully to the right to engage 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear.

**!** Failure to follow this advice could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> gear).

## Engaging reverse gear



- ☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left then forwards.

**!** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

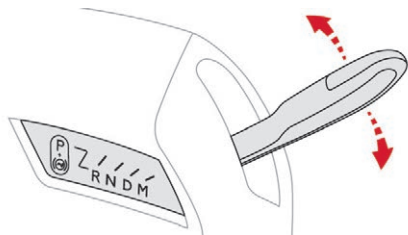
**i** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:

- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

## Automatic gearbox

Six or eight-speed automatic gearbox with steering wheel-mounted selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via steering mounted paddles located behind the steering wheel.

## Gear selector



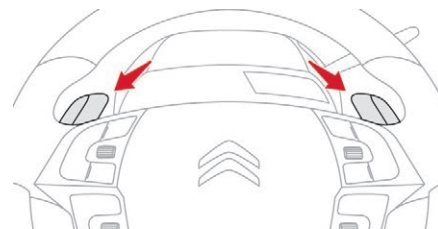
- P.** Park.
  - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake applied or released.
  - Starting the engine.
- R.** Reverse.
  - Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.
- N.** Neutral.
  - Immobilisation of the vehicle, parking brake applied.
  - Starting the engine.
- D.** Automatic operation.
- M.** Manual operation with sequential changing of the gears.

**i** To come out of position **P**, shift the selector to the right to the required position, while pressing the brake pedal to the floor.


**i** To select position **P**, move the selector to the uppermost position (towards **R**), then push it forwards, then to the left. Only engage it when the vehicle is completely stationary. In this position, the front wheels are locked. Ensure that the selector is positioned correctly.

**i** To move the selector, switch on the ignition or start the engine. When the battery charge is too low, it will not be possible to move the selector.


## Steering mounted controls



**+** Control paddle to change up, to the right of the steering wheel.

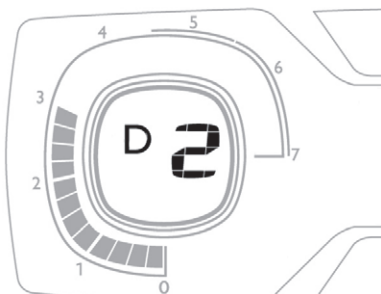
 Pull the "+" control paddle towards you to change up.

**-** Control paddle to change down, to the left of the steering wheel.

 Pull the "-" control paddle towards you to change down.

**i** The steering mounted paddles do not allow neutral to be selected, nor reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

## Displays on the instrument panel



When you move the selector, the indicator corresponding to its position is displayed on the instrument panel.

- P.** Parking.
- R.** Reverse.
- N.** Neutral.
- D.** Drive (Automatic operation).
- 1 to 6 or 8.** Gears engaged during manual operation.
- .** Invalid value during manual operation.


## Starting the vehicle

- ☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, select position **P** or **N**.
- ☞ Start the engine.

**i** If these conditions are not met, an audible signal is issued together with a message.

**i** If **P** is displayed on the instrument panel but the gear selector is in another position, move the selector to position **P** to allow the engine to be started.

- ☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
- ☞ Select automatic mode (position **D**), sequential mode (position **M**) or reverse (position **R**).

**i**  If you do not press the brake pedal when trying to move the gear selector out of position **P**, this warning lamp or this symbol appears on the instrument panel with the message "Shift automatic gearbox to P", the **P** symbol flashes and a beep sounds.

- ☞ Check that the display on the instrument panel agrees with the position engaged.
- ☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

- ☞ If the parking brake is released, the vehicle moves off.  
If the parking brake is applied and automatic mode is activated, accelerate gradually.

**!** If the parking brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are properly closed.

**!** Never press the brake and accelerator pedals at the same time. Braking or accelerating must be done with the right foot only. Pressing the two pedals simultaneously risks damaging the gearbox.

**i** If position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected when the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.

**!** Never leave children unattended in the vehicle when the engine is running. When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

**i** Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving. If position **N** is selected by mistake while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

**i** Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary. If you wish to engage reverse gear, to prevent jolting, do not accelerate immediately after selecting **R**. Selection of position **R** is accompanied by the sound of a beep.

**!** In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chocks supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

**!** If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

## Automatic mode



Select position **D**.

**D** and the gear engaged appear in the instrument panel.

The gearbox operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any action by the driver. It continuously selects the gear best suited to the following parameters:

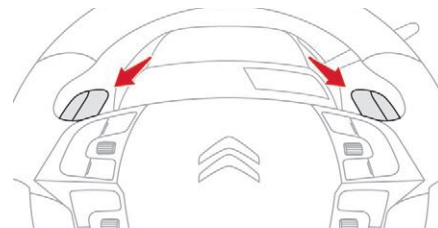
- optimisation of fuel consumption,
- style of driving,
- road conditions,
- vehicle load.

For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.

When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.

If you release the accelerator sharply, the gearbox will not change to a higher gear for safety reasons.

## Temporary control of gear changing



You can temporarily take control of gear changes using the steering mounted control paddles "+" and "-". The gear change instruction is acted on if the engine speed permits.

This function allows you to anticipate certain situations, such as overtaking another vehicle or approaching a bend in the road.

After a few moments with no action on the control paddles, the gearbox returns to automatic operation.

## Manual mode

Select position **M**.

Use the steering mounted control paddles "+" and "-" to change gears.

The gears engaged are displayed in sequence in the instrument panel.

When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox automatically selects gear **1**.

In sequential mode, it is not necessary to release the accelerator pedal when changing gear.

Changing from one gear to another only occurs if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions allow; otherwise the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.

If the engine speed is too low or too high, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the gear actually engaged is displayed.

### Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (selector between two positions).

**i** You can change mode at any time by moving the gear selector from **D** to **M** or vice versa.

## Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral. In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the lever is not in position **P**, when the driver's

door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears:

☞ reposition the lever to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Whatever the parking circumstances, you must apply the parking brake manually to immobilise the vehicle if automatic operation has been deactivated.

**i** In all circumstances, ensure that the selector is in position **P** before leaving your vehicle.

**i** In the event of a battery failure, use the chock to immobilise your vehicle.

## Operating fault

If the gearbox malfunctions, the

**SERVICE** Service warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may then feel a substantial jolt when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R**. This jolt will not cause any damage to the gearbox.

Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Gear efficiency indicator

This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

## Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.

Gear efficiency recommendations are for information only. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.

This function cannot be deactivated.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.



The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an arrow.

**I** With a manual gearbox, the arrow may be accompanied by the gear recommended. This arrow may be pointing up or down, depending on the context.

**I** The system adapts its gear efficiency recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

## Stop & Start

Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in the traffic (red lights, traffic jams, or other, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you wish to move off again.

Restarting occurs instantaneously, quickly and silently.

## Operation

### Going into engine STOP mode



This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically.

- **With a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h), or with the vehicle stationary (with the PureTech 110, 130 and BlueHDi 100, 130 versions), when you place the gear lever in neutral and you release the clutch pedal,
- **With an automatic gearbox**, at speeds below 2 mph (3 km/h), or when the vehicle is stationary (depending on version), when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector into position **N**.

If your vehicle is fitted with this system, a time counter calculates the sum of the periods in STOP mode during a journey. It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on with the "START/STOP" button.

**I** For your convenience, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.

The Stop & Start system does not modify the vehicle's functions, such as, for example, braking, power steering, etc.

**!** Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the "START/STOP" button.

### Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode is not invoked when:

- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start using the "START/STOP" button,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,

- certain special conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) where the engine is needed for control of the system.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Going into engine START mode



This indicator lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically.

- **With a manual gearbox**, when you **fully** depress the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse gear.

## Special cases: START mode activated automatically

START mode is activated automatically if:

- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h) with a manual gearbox (2 mph (3 km/h) with PureTech 110, 130, THP 165, 180 and BlueHDi 100, 130 versions), 2 mph (3 km/h) with an automatic gearbox,
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- certain specific conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.) where the engine is needed for control of the system or vehicle.



In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**This operation is perfectly normal.**

## Deactivation/Manual reactivation

In certain circumstances, such as to maintain the temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be necessary to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on. If the engine is in STOP mode, it then restarts. The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

The Stop & Start is deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen. Select "Stop & Start" to deactivate the system.



It is indicated by this warning lamp coming on.

Select "Stop & Start" again to reactivate the function.



It is indicated by this indicator lamp coming on.

**!** Use of the adaptive cruise control deactivates the Stop & Start function.

## Operating fault



If the system fails, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds before lighting up continuously, associated with a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the engine may stall.

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.

Depending on version, an alert message may also be displayed, asking you to place the gear lever in position **N** and press the brake pedal.

It is then necessary to switch off the ignition and start the engine again using the "START/STOP" button.

**!** The Stop & Start requires the use of a 12 V battery of special specification and technology.

All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **!** Opening the bonnet



Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

### **!** Driving on flooded roads

Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving advice**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

## Tyre under-inflation detection

System which automatically checks the pressures of the tyres while driving.

The system monitors the pressure of the four tyres when the vehicle is moving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change.**

The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.

**!** The under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

This system does not avoid the need to check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres worsens road-holding, lengthens braking distances, causes premature wear of the tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).



Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

**i** The inflation pressures defined for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

### ! Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).  
Otherwise, add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

- ☞ If it is not possible to make this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- or
- ☞ In case of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).

**i** The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

## Under-inflation alert



This is indicated by continuous illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on equipment, the display of a message.

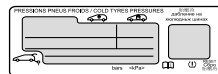
- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

**!** The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ If you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold.

## Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressures of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.



**!** Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.

The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.  
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

### **i** Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Reinitialisation of the system is done on the touch screen, with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.

- ☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Under-inflation initialisation**".
- ☞ Confirm the instruction by pressing "**Yes**", an audible signal and a message confirm the reinitialisation.

The new pressure parameters saved are treated as reference values by the system.

## Malfunction



### SERVICE

The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer provided.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** After carrying out any work on the system, the pressure of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.

## Memorising speeds

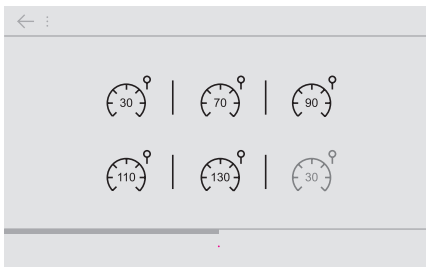
This function allows speeds to be saved, which can then be offered to set the two systems: the speed limiter (to limit the speed of the vehicle) or the cruise control (for a vehicle cruising speed).

You can memorise up to six speed settings for each of the two systems. By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

## Memorisation

This function can be accessed in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

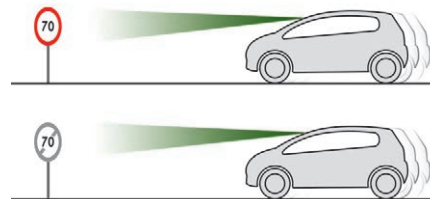
- ☞ Select the "**Driving functions**" tab then **Adjusting Speeds**.



- ☞ Select the system for which you want to memorise new speed settings.
- ☞ Press the button corresponding to the speed setting you want to modify.
- ☞ Enter the new value using the numerical keypad and confirm.

**!** As a safety measure, the driver must carry out these operations when stationary.

## Speed Limit recognition and recommendation



This system allows the speed limit detected by the camera to be displayed in the instrument panel.

The system also processes speed limit information from the navigation system mapping.

**!** You should update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.

The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

**!** The speed limit units (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account in order to observe the speed limit. For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

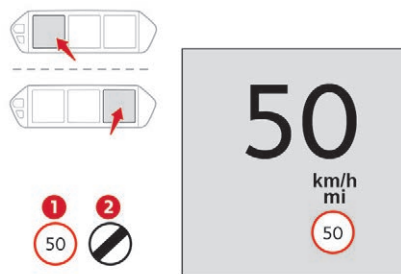
**!** The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly. The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system. The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic. The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period. The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

**i** To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

## Activation/Deactivation

Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the touch screen's **Driving** menu. Select the **"Vehicle settings"** tab, then **"Security"/"Safety"** and **"Recommended speed display"**.

## Displays in the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication.  
or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.

## Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:

- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),

- windscreen area located in front of the camera dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- obstructed road signs (by other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

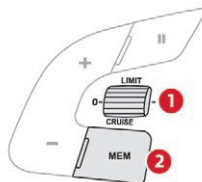
## Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control memorisation button.

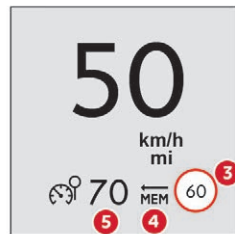
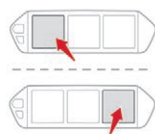
For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

## Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

## Memorising the speed



Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and **MEM** flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

Make an **initial** press on button **2** to request saving of the speed suggested. A message is displayed to confirm the request.

Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting. After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

## Speed limiter "LIMIT"



System which prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

Once the programmed speed limit is reached, additional pressure on the accelerator pedal has no effect.

**Operation** of the speed limiter requires a programmed speed of at least 19 mph (30 km/h).

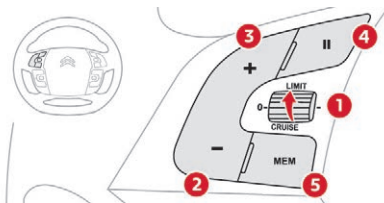
The speed limiter is **paused** using the control. The programmed speed can be exceeded temporarily by pressing the accelerator firmly beyond the point of resistance.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal until the set speed limit has been reached again.

**i** The programmed speed remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

**!** The speed limiter cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

## Steering mounted controls

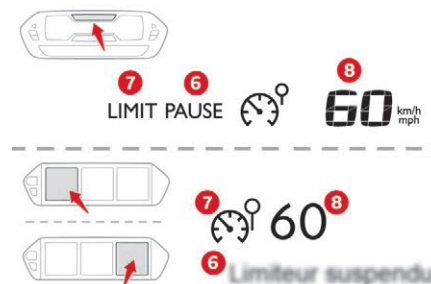


1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decrease the programmed speed.
3. Increase the programmed speed.
4. Speed limiter On/Pause.
5. Display the list of memorised speeds or Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

For more information on **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation** and its memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

## Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter on/off indicator.
7. Speed limiter mode selected.
8. Value of the speed setting.

## Switching on/Pause

- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to the LIMIT position: the speed limiter mode is selected but is not switched on (Pause).
- ☞ Switch the speed limiter on by pressing button **4**, if the speed displayed is suitable (by default, the last speed programmed).
- ☞ You can pause the speed limiter by pressing button **4** again: the display confirms that it has been stopped (Pause).

## Adjusting the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

## Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

- ☞ Press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**, to exceed the programmed speed limit.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes. An audible signal accompanies the flashing of the programmed speed when exceeding the speed is not due to an action by the driver (steep hill, etc.).

As soon as the vehicle's speed returns to the programmed value, the limiter operates again: the display of the programmed speed becomes steady again.

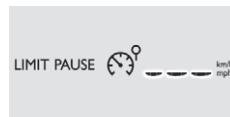
## Switching off

- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to the 0 position. The display of information related to the speed limiter disappears.

## Malfunction

Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the speed limiter.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** On sharp acceleration, as when descending a steep hill, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. An audible signal accompanies the flashing of the programmed speed when exceeding the speed is not due to an action by the driver.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

## Cruise control "CRUISE"



System which automatically maintains the speed of the vehicle at the value programmed by the driver, without any action on the accelerator pedal.

**Operation** of the cruise control requires a vehicle speed of at least 25 mph (40 km/h). As well as engagement:

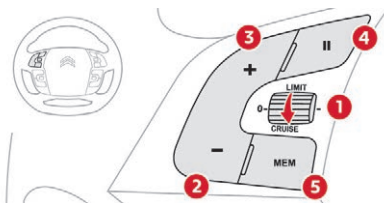
- of third gear or higher with a manual gearbox,
- of second gear or higher in manual mode with an automatic gearbox,
- of position **D** with an automatic gearbox.

The cruise control is **paused** manually by pressing button **4** or pressing the brake pedal or if the ESC system is invoked for safety reasons.

It is possible to exceed the programmed speed temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal until the programmed cruise speed is reached again.

## Steering mounted controls

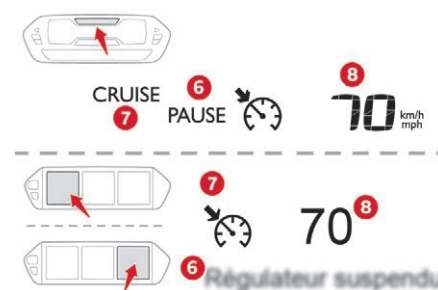


1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Set the current speed as the cruise speed setting/Reduce the cruise speed setting.
3. Set the current speed as the cruise speed setting/Increase the cruise speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Display the list of memorised speeds or Use the speed suggested by the sSpeed Limit recognition and recommendation system.

**i** Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

**!** The cruise control system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor can it replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. It is recommended that you always keep your feet close to the pedals.

## Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

For more information on **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation** and its memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

## Switching on

- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to the **CRUISE** position: cruise control mode is selected but the function is paused.

- ☞ Press button **2** or **3**: your vehicle's current speed becomes the cruise speed. The cruise control is activated (ON).

## Pause

You can temporarily stop the speed limiter by pressing button **4** again: the display confirms that it has been stopped (Pause).

## Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

**!** Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

**!** As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

## Exceeding the programmed speed

If the speed setting is exceeded, the displayed speed flashes.

The display becomes steady again once the speed of the vehicle has reached the level of the speed setting again.

## Switching off

- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to the 0 position. The display of information related to the cruise control disappears.

## Operating fault

Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the cruise control.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** When the cruise control is switched on, be careful if you maintain the pressure on one of the programmed speed modification buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle. Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic. When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. On steep climbs or when towing, the programmed speed may not be reached or maintained. The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that mats are secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

## Adaptive cruise control



The system allows the speed of your vehicle to be maintained at the setting you have made, and also to respect the inter-vehicle time that you have selected between your vehicle and the one in front, when the situation permits it.

## Switching between the types of cruise control

The choice between "adaptive" and "standard" cruise control is made in the **Driving** menu.



☞ Turn the cruise control wheel to the "CRUISE" position.

☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the **Driving functions** tab and then **Active cruise control** to activate or deactivate adaptive cruise control.

**i** For more information on the **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Principles of operation

Using radar with a range of about 100 metres, located at the front of the vehicle, this system detects a vehicle travelling in front of your vehicle.

It automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front.

If the vehicle in front is travelling more slowly, the system progressively reduces the speed of your vehicle using just engine braking (as if the driver had pressed the "-" button).

If your vehicle is too close to the vehicle in front or is approaching it too quickly, adaptive cruise control is automatically deactivated.

The driver is then alerted by an audible signal accompanied by a message.

If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the adaptive cruise control gradually accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

If the driver operates the direction indicator to the left (left-hand drive) or to the right (right-hand drive), to overtake a slower vehicle, the adaptive cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

**i** The adaptive cruise control operates by day and at night, in fog or moderate rainfall.

**!** The adaptive cruise control uses only engine braking to slow the vehicle. Consequently the vehicle loses speed slowly, as when releasing the accelerator pedal.

The regulation range is limited: there will no longer be any adjustment of speed if the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front becomes too high (19 mph (30 km/h)).

**!** If the difference between the programmed speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front is too great, the speed cannot be adjusted: the cruise control is automatically deactivated.

## General information

The adaptive cruise control is **switched on** manually, it requires the speed of the vehicle to be between 25 mph (40 km/h) and 93 mph (150 km/h) and the engagement of:

- third gear or higher with a manual gearbox,
- second gear in manual mode with an automatic gearbox,
- position **D** with an automatic gearbox.

**!** If the cruise speed setting is above 93 mph (150 km/h), the adaptive cruise control switches to standard cruise control mode, without automatic regulation of the inter-vehicle safety distance (a message appears in the instrument panel).

**!** The adaptive cruise control cannot in any circumstances replace the observation of speed limits, nor the need for the vigilance on the part of the driver. It is recommended that you always keep your feet close to the pedals.

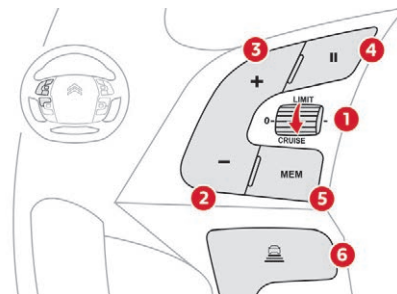
The adaptive cruise control can be **paused** manually or automatically:

- by pressing button **4**,
- by pressing the brake pedal,
- if the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons,
- if there is an action on the electric parking brake control,
- when an inter-vehicle time threshold is reached (calculated according to the relative speeds of your vehicle and the vehicle in front and the inter-vehicle time setting chosen),
- when the distance between your vehicle and the one in front becomes too short,

- when the speed of the vehicle in front is too low,
- when the speed of your vehicle becomes too low.

**i** The inter-vehicle time setting is memorised when switching off the ignition.

## Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Lower the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/Raise the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.

5. Display the list of memorised speeds or, Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

For more information on **Memorising speeds**, refer to the corresponding section.

For more information on **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation** and its memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

## Displays on the instrument panel



Information is grouped together on the instrument panel.

7. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
8. Cruise control selection indication, or vehicle speed adjustment phase.

9. Value of the programmed speed or adjusted speed below the programmed speed.

## Operation

### Switching on

**Adaptive** cruise control must be selected in the **Driving** menu.

- ☞ Turn wheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position: cruise control mode is selected but the function is paused.
- ☞ Press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

The cruise control is activated (ON).

By default, the inter-vehicle time is set at 2 seconds.

Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

### Modification of the cruise speed

- using buttons 2 or 3:
  - ☞ by successive short presses, to change in steps of + or – 1 mph (km/h),
  - ☞ by a maintained press, to change in steps of + or – 5 mph (km/h).
- pressing button **5**:
  - ☞ the six speeds memorised are displayed in the touch screen,

- ☞ choose a speed setting: it is displayed on the instrument panel.

The selection screen closes after a few moments. The modification is then accepted.

- by pressing button **5**, if your vehicle is equipped with speed limit recognition:
  - ☞ the speed to be memorised appears on the instrument panel.
  - ☞ press button **5** again to save the speed.

The value appears immediately on the instrument panel.

For more information on **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation** and its memorisation, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed setting close to the current speed of your vehicle.

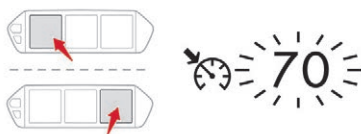
### Changing the inter-vehicle distance

Press button **6** to select a new inter-vehicle distance setting from the three levels ("**Close**", "**Normal**", "**Distant**").

This setting remains memorised, whatever the state of the system.

**i** If a vehicle presence is detected by the radar and if the speed selected is much higher than the speed of that vehicle, the system does not activate and the alert message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed until the driving conditions are safe to allow activation of the system.

### Exceeding the programmed setting



It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.











Then simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed setting is unintentionally exceeded, descending a steep hill for example, the speed setting in the instrument panel flashes as a warning.

## Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Symbol	Display on the instrument panel	Associated message	Comments
			No vehicle detected: the system operates as a standard cruise control.
			Detection of a vehicle, at the limit of the range of the radar: the system operates as a standard cruise control.
		"SPEED ADJUSTED"	Detection of a vehicle that is too close or running at a speed lower than your vehicle's cruise speed setting. The system uses engine braking to slow your vehicle and then hold it at the speed of the vehicle in front so as to observe the programmed inter-vehicle time. The regulation range is limited to a maximum difference of 19 mph (30 km/h) between the cruise speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front.
		"SPEED ADJUSTED"	When the adjusted speed reaches the limit of regulation (speed setting – 19 mph (30 km/h)), the adjusted speed flashes together with the speed setting to signal that automatic deactivation of the system is imminent.
		"Cruise control paused".	If the system exceeds the limit of speed adjustment that it can make and in the absence of any reaction by the driver (operation of the direction indicator, change of lane, reduction in the speed of the vehicle), the system is automatically paused. The display of the deactivation message is accompanied by an audible signal.

**!** When the adaptive cruise control is automatically paused, it can only be reactivated when safe conditions are restored. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.

When the conditions allow, it is recommended that the function be reactivated by pressing button **2** or **3**, which will make the current speed of your vehicle the new cruise speed setting, rather than by pressing button **4** (on/pause) which reactivates the cruise control using the old cruise speed setting, which may be very different from the current speed of your vehicle.

## Operating limits

The adaptive cruise control uses only engine braking to slow the vehicle. Consequently the vehicle loses speed slowly, as when releasing the accelerator pedal.

The system is paused automatically:

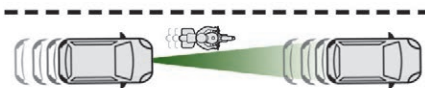
- if the vehicle in front slows down too much or too suddenly, and the driver does not brake,
- if a vehicle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

- if the system does not slow the vehicle enough to continue to maintain a safe distance, for example when descending a steep hill.

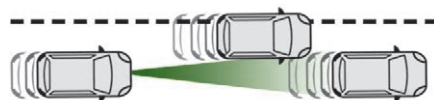
The regulation range is limited to a maximum difference of 19 mph (30 km/h) between the cruise speed setting and the speed of the vehicle in front. Above this, the system goes into pause if the safety distance becomes too short.

**i** Poor weather conditions (very heavy rain, accumulation of snow in front of the radar) may hinder the operation of the system, with the display of the operating fault message "SYSTEM INACTIVE: Reduced visibility". The function remains unavailable until the message disappears.

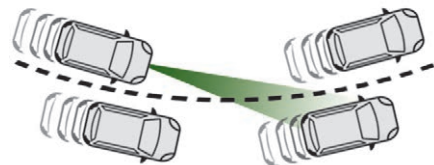
Since the radar detection range is relatively narrow, it is possible that the system cannot detect:



- vehicles of reduced width, such as motorcycles, for example,



- vehicles not running in the middle of the lane,



- vehicles entering a corner,
- vehicles changing lane at the last moment.

The cruise control does not take account of:

- stationary vehicles,
- vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

## Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction of the adaptive cruise control system, you are warned by an audible signal and the display of the message "Driving aid functions fault".

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- !** When the cruise control is working, take care if keeping pressed one of the cruise control programmed speed change buttons: this can lead to a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle. Do not use adaptive cruise control on slippery surfaces or in heavy traffic. When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. On steep climbs or when towing, the programmed speed may not be reached or maintained. The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that mats are secured correctly,
  - never fit one mat on top of another.

- !** Operation of the radar, located in the front bumper, may be impaired by the accumulation of dirt (dust, mud, etc.) or in certain weather conditions (snow, frost, etc.). The message "SYSTEM INACTIVE: Reduced visibility". is displayed to indicate that the function is in standby. Clean the front bumper regularly. If the front bumper is to be repainted or retouched, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

## Adaptive cruise control until vehicle is stopped/ until 19 mph (30 km/h)

**Function until vehicle is stopped:** with automatic gearbox

**Function until 19 mph (30 km/h):** with manual gearbox



This system provides the following functions:

- Automatically maintains the vehicle at the speed set by the driver.
- Automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the one in front.

With an automatic gearbox, automatic adjustment of the distance can cause your vehicle to come to a complete stop.

- i** Cruise control remains active after changing gear regardless of the gearbox type.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.



For this purpose there is a radar installed in the front bumper.

**!** Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works on **moving vehicles**, driving in the **same direction** as your vehicle.

## Principle of operation

The system automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.

If the vehicle in front is driving more slowly, the system slows or even stops your vehicle, using engine braking and the braking system (for versions fitted with an automatic gearbox). If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.

If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

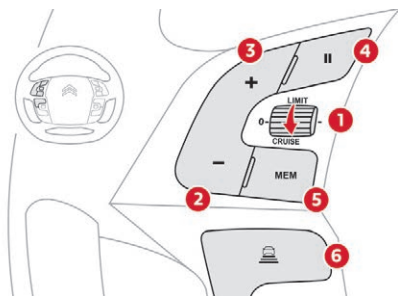
**i** The brake lamps illuminate as soon as the braking system is activated with deceleration of the vehicle.

**!** This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits and safety distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.

The driver must be ready at all times to retake control of their vehicle by permanently holding both hands on the steering wheel and keeping their feet near the brake and accelerator pedals.

## Steering mounted control

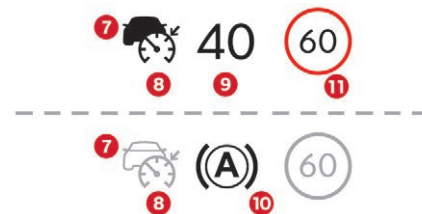


1. Select cruise control mode.

2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/decrease the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Displays in the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence/absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation/deactivation.
9. Value of the speed setting.

10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary (versions fitted with an automatic gearbox).
11. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

As soon as a vehicle is detected, the symbol **7** is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol **7** is empty.

When the cruise control is in operation, the symbols **7** and **8** are displayed in green. By default, they are displayed in grey.



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of vehicle detected by the radar.

This information is visible in the instrument panel in "DRIVING" display mode.

## Switching on

### To switch on the cruise control

- ☞ With the engine running, turn the wheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position. The system is paused (grey display).

### With a manual gearbox

With the speed of the vehicle between 19 and 99 mph (30 and 160 km/h):

- ☞ When the vehicle is moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting. The cruise control starts operating (displayed in green).

### With an automatic gearbox

Mode **D** or **M** must be selected.

With the speed of the vehicle between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h):

- ☞ When the vehicle is moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

### Remembering the settings

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting value chosen by the driver. By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at "**Normal**" (2 dashes). Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

## Pause

The cruise control can be **paused** manually by:

- action by the driver:
  - On the button **4** (Pause).
  - On the brake pedal.
  - On the electric parking brake control.
  - On the clutch pedal, by pressing and holding for more than 5 seconds.

- When changing from mode **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.
- or automatically:
  - If the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons.
  - When the speed of the vehicle falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox.

**!** When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met. The message "Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable" is displayed while reactivation is not possible.

## Reactivating the function

### Versions fitted with a manual gearbox

To reactivate the function, the driver must accelerate to reach at least 19 mph (30 km/h), then press one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

### Versions fitted with an automatic gearbox

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.

The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system above 19 mph (30 km/h) by pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approx. five minutes).

**!** As a safety measure, wait until the current speed approaches the speed setting to reactivate the function by pressing button **4**.

## Modification of the speed setting

With the engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

## Modification from the current speed

- ☞ By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or – 1 mph (km/h),
- ☞ By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of + or – 5 mph (km/h).

**!** Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

## Modification from the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system

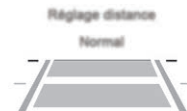
- ☞ The suggested speed is displayed in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

## Modification of the programmed inter-vehicle distance



Three threshold settings are suggested for the inter-vehicle distance:

- "**Distant**" (3 dashes),
- "**Normal**" (2 dashes),
- "**Close**" (1 dash).

Engine running and with the wheel at the "**CRUISE**" position:

- ☞ Press button **6** to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance.
- ☞ By pressing button **6** repeatedly, cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.

The modification is then accepted.

This setting remains in memory, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

**i** The selection also applies to the stopping distance (versions with EAT6 and EAT8 automatic gearbox).












### Exceeding the programmed setting








It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.  
The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.  
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.




### Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all necessary information on the instrument panel, you must select the "DRIVING" display mode beforehand.  
The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.  
The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 (grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
 (grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
 or  (green)		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 (green)	 (orange)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver must take back control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
 (green)	 (red)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). <b>The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.</b>
 or  (grey)	 (orange)	"Activation not possible, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control (speed outside the operating range, winding road).

## Versions fitted with an automatic gearbox

Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
 or  (grey)/(green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver must accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it.

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused. The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system by pressing one of buttons **2**, **3** or **4**. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approx. five minutes).

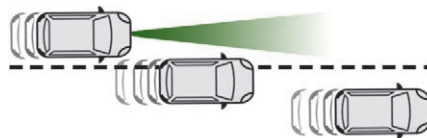
## Operating limits

The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.

The system cannot deal with certain situations and the driver has to take back control of the vehicle.

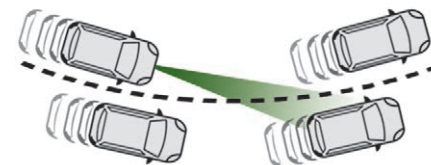
### Cases of non-detection by the radar:

- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).

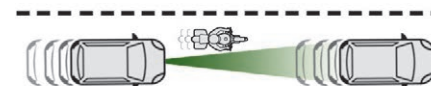


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Oncoming vehicles.

### When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle. Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

### Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:

- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

**The system must not be activated in the following situations:**

- When the "space-saver" spare wheel is being used (depending on version).
- When towing.
- Following an impact on the front bumper.

**! Be particularly careful:**

- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When you enter a tunnel or cross a bridge.

**!** The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall. However, it is strongly recommended that you always adapt your speed and your safety distance from vehicles ahead according to the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface. Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance. Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas where pedestrians are likely to cross the road, in heavy traffic, on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, when there is snowfall, if the front bumper is damaged or when the brake lamps have failed. In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even reached: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.

**!** The system is not intended for the following situations:

- the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper),
- driving on a racing track,
- driving on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera or radar masked (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

The message "SYSTEM INACTIVE: Reduced visibility" is displayed to indicate that the function is in standby.

**!** Clean the front bumper regularly. If the front bumper is to be repainted or retouched, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

## Malfunction



If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.

If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms a malfunction.

Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** The adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically if the use of a "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected or if there is a malfunction on the lateral brake lamps or trailer brake lamps (for approved trailers).

## Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

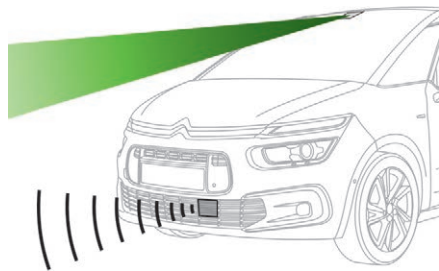


The system allows:

- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

This system is a driving aid that includes three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen, and, depending on the version, a radar located in the front bumper.

**!** This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety. It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations. This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

**i** As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

## Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start. The system can be deactivated or activated via the vehicle settings menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

## Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.  
The ASR must not be deactivated.  
All passenger seat belts must be fastened.  
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera or radar obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

On versions with camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: **"Driving aids camera: visibility limited, see user guide"**. In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

**!** Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera. Clean the front bumper, especially around the radar, removing mud, snow, etc.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:

- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- damaged front bumper (version with radar),
- following impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

**i** The system is automatically deactivated after the use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the lateral brake lamps is detected.

**!** It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

**!** After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

**!** If the front bumper is to be repainted or retouched, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar.

## Collision Risk Alert

It warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

### Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be alerted of the presence of a moving or stationary vehicle in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.



The current threshold can only be modified via the touch screen's **Driving** menu.

You can select one of three predefined thresholds:

- **"Distant"**,
- **"Normal"**,
- **"Close"**.

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

### Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

These levels of alert are based on the inter-vehicle time between your vehicle and the vehicle in front.

They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.



**Level 1 (orange):** visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close. The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.



**Level 2 (red):** visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent. The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

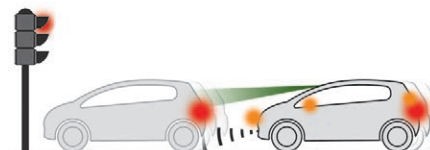
**i** Where the speed of your vehicle is too fast approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

**Important:** alert level 1 is never displayed when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

## Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

### Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.

It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

### Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:

- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle's speed is between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera alone) or 87 mph (140 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) when a moving vehicle is detected.



If the camera and/or radar have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.

With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

**i** The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

**i** Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal. If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

## Malfunction

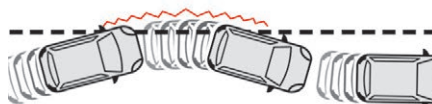


In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## Lane Departure Warning System

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the ground, the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of involuntary crossing of a line. This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



## Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 mph and 112 mph (65 km/h and 180 km/h).

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands.

The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.

The ESC system must be activated and fault-free.

**!** This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance. The driver must remain in control of the vehicle under all circumstances.

The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (if lane markings disappear, for example). It is necessary to observe the driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

## Operation

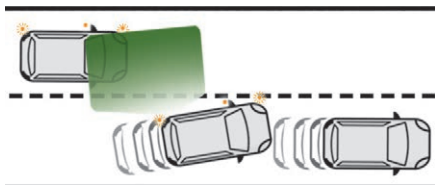
Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected, it makes the correction to the trajectory required to return the vehicle to its initial path.

The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

**i** If the driver wishes to maintain the trajectory of the vehicle, they can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example).  
The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.

However, with the Blind Spot Detection system activated, if the driver starts changing lanes and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.

For more information on the **Blind Spot Detection**, refer to the corresponding section.





**!** If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.






## Driving situations and associated alerts

To benefit from all necessary information on the instrument panel, you must previously select the "DRIVING" display mode.

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.

The display of these alerts is not sequential.

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	System deactivated.
ON		 (grey)	System active, conditions not met: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h),</li> <li>- no lane marking recognised,</li> <li>- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,</li> <li>- "sporty" driving.</li> </ul>
ON		 (grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (green)	Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON		 (orange)/(green) "Take control of the vehicle".	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver.</li> <li>- During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory.</li> </ul>

## Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving where there are no lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

## Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:

- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- poor weather conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:

- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling stand,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

## Activation/Deactivation

Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen. Select the **"Driving functions"** then the **"Lane assist"** tab.

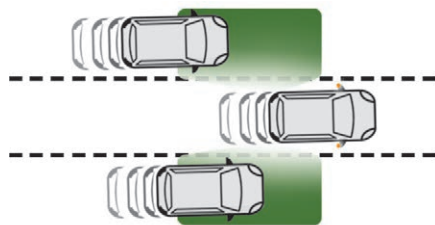
The system state remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Malfunction

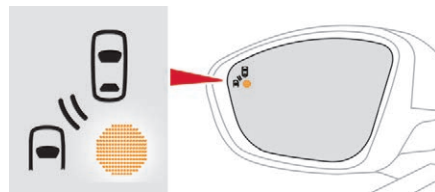


In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Blind Spot Detection



This system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spots of their vehicle (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A fixed warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

**!** This driving aid system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the relative distances and speeds of other vehicles and to predict their movements before deciding whether to change lane. This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

## Activation/Deactivation



The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.



When the function is activated, this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.



The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

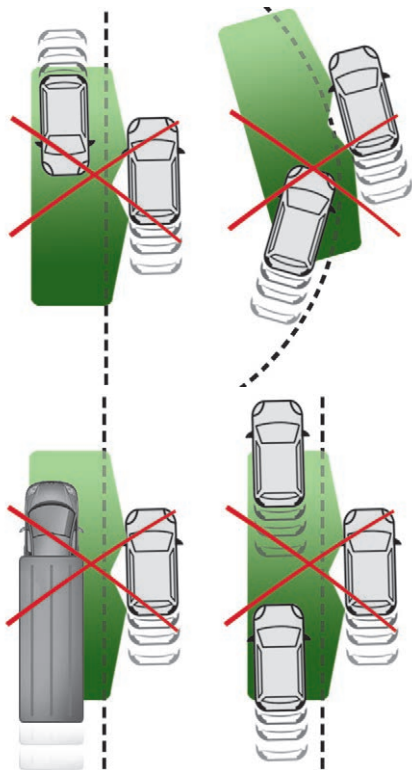
## Operation

Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.

The alert is given by an orange warning lamp coming on in the relevant door mirror, as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, cycle – is detected.

The following conditions must be met for this:

- all vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes,
- the speed of the vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,
- overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),

- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both detected in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- when overtaking quickly,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- if the Park Assist function is activated.

## Operating fault



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments in the instrument panel, accompanied by the Service warning lamp coming on and the display of a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

**i** The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).

In particular, driving on a wet surface or the transition from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. the presence of water droplets in the blind spot is interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow.

Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

## **!** High pressure jet wash

When washing your vehicle, keep the nozzle at a minimum distance of 12 inches (30 cm) from the sensors.

## Active Blind Spot Monitoring System

(depending on version)

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.

### Conditions for operation

The following systems must be activated:

- Blind Spot Detection,
- Lane Departure Warning System.

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h) inclusive.

## Fatigue detection system

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

Depending on version, the function relies either on the "Driver Attention Warning" system alone or combined with the "Driver Attention Alert" system.

**!** These systems cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must remain in control of their decisions. In no case can these systems keep the driver awake or prevent them from falling asleep at the wheel. It is the driver's responsibility to stop if they feel tired.

## Activation/Deactivation



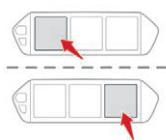
These functions are activated and deactivated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Driver Attention Warning



The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).



This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal. If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

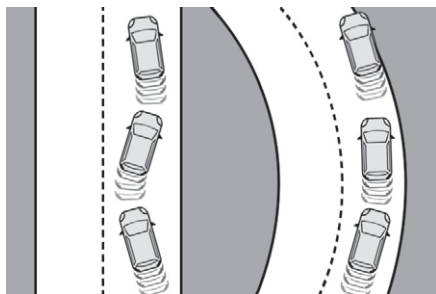
The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

**i** As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby. The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

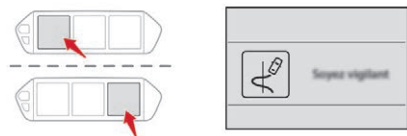
## Driver Attention Alert

Depending on version, the "Driver Attention Warning" may be combined with the "Driver Attention Alert".



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 40 mph (65 km/h)).



When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.

The driver is then alerted by the message **"Take care!"**, accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message **"Take a break!"**, accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

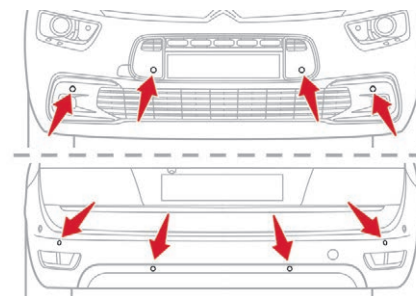
**i** In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

**!** Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera. Clean the front bumper, especially around the radar, removing mud, snow, etc.

## Parking sensors



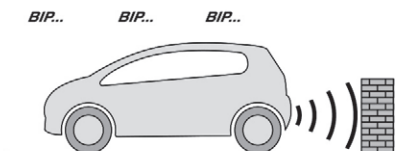
Using sensors located in the bumper, this function warns of the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) entering their field of detection.

**!** This function is a manoeuvring aid which cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain attentive and stay in control of their vehicle. They must always check the vehicle's surroundings before undertaking a manoeuvre. During the entire manoeuvre, the driver must ensure that the space remains clear.

## Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear. This is confirmed by an audible signal. The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

## Audible assistance



The information on proximity is given by an intermittent sound signal, the succession of which becomes more rapid as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates which side the obstacle is on. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than approximately thirty centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

## Visual assistance



It supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle (white: more distant obstacles; orange: close obstacles; red: very close obstacles). When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

## Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle remains below 6 mph (10 km/h). The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if no further obstacles are detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

**i** The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) indicates whether the obstacle is in front or behind.

## Deactivation/Activation



The function is deactivated and activated in the **Driving** menu of the touch screen.



This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel when the function is deactivated. A new selection reactivates the function.

The state of the function stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

**I** The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist system is measuring a space. For more information on the **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.

- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

## Operating fault

**SERVICE** If the system fails, when reverse gear is engaged this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds before lighting up continuously, together with the Service warning lamp.

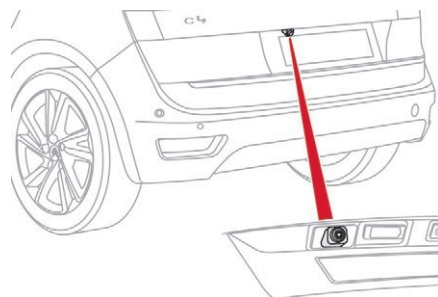
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**I** In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty. Certain sound sources (motorcycle, lorry, pneumatic drill, etc.) may trigger the audible signals of the parking sensor system.

### **! High pressure jet wash**

When washing your vehicle, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the sensors.

## Reversing camera

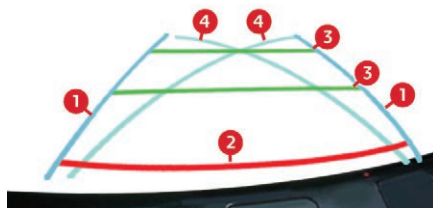


The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on version, the image is displayed on the touch screen or the instrument panel.

**i** The reversing camera function may be supplemented with parking sensors.

**!** The reversing camera cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



The representation with overlaid lines helps the manoeuvre.

**i** They are represented by lines marked "on the ground" and do not allow you to determine the position of tall obstacles (for example: other vehicles, etc.) relative to the vehicle.

Some distortion of the image is normal. It is normal to have a part of the number plate showing in the bottom of the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the general direction of the vehicle (the gap represents the width of your vehicle except for the door mirrors).

The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The green lines **3** represent distances of about one and two metres beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.

The turquoise blue curves **4** represent the maximum turning circle.

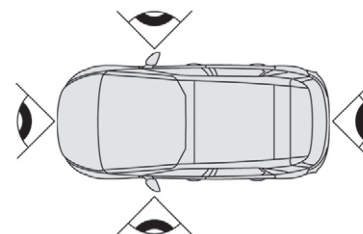
**i** Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

**i** Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

**! High pressure jet wash**

When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance from less than 30 cm from the lens of the camera.

## Vision 360



This system allows the near surroundings of the vehicle to be viewed in the instrument panel using cameras.

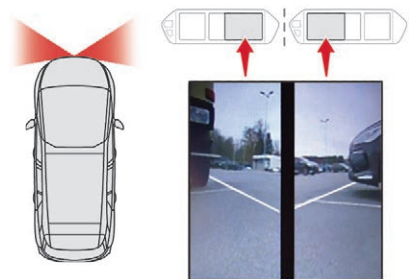
They are situated at the front and rear of the vehicle, as well as under the door mirrors. Depending on the angle of view chosen (front view, rear view or 360° panoramic view), the Vision 360 system provides a specific visual aid in particular driving conditions, such as when entering a blind crossroads or manoeuvring in areas with reduced visibility.

Once activated, this function is operational up to 9 mph (15 km/h). Above 19 mph (30 km/h), the system deactivates automatically.

**!** This system is a visual aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The images provided by the camera(s) may be distorted by the relief. The presence of areas in shadow, bright sunlight, or poor lighting conditions may make the image dark and reduce contrast.

## Forward vision

The camera situated on the front bumper is activated and the views of the area to the front left and the area to the front right of your vehicle appear simultaneously in the instrument panel.

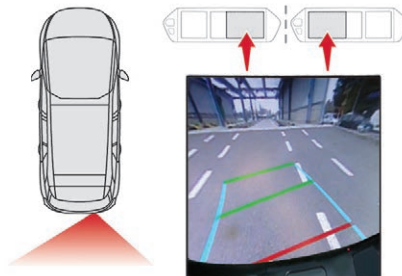


## Rear vision

The camera situated on the tailgate is activated and the view of the area behind your vehicle is displayed in the instrument panel and behaves as a reversing camera, regardless of the position of the gear selector.

The blue outline represents the width of your vehicle (without mirrors): its orientation depends on the position of the steering wheel. The red line represents the distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper and the two green lines the distances of 1 m and 2 m respectively from the rear bumper.

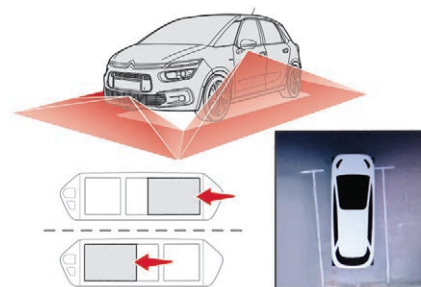
**i** The rear vision is displayed automatically when reverse gear is engaged, regardless of the state of the system.



## Vision 360

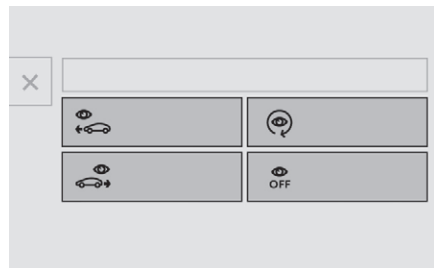
The cameras situated on the front and rear bumpers as well as those below the door mirrors activate and a view from above of your vehicle in its close environment is generated and is displayed in the instrument panel.

**i** Opening a door or the tailgate will disrupt the 360 and rear views. Installation of the very cold climate screen will alter the image transmitted by the front camera.



## Operation

### Function activation



With the engine running:

- ☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "Panoramic visual aid".

On display of the menu, select one of the three views:

"Front camera".

"360 camera".

"Rear camera".

The selected view comes up in the instrument panel.

- i The display disappears from the instrument panel above 9 mph (15 km/h).

### Function deactivation

- ☞ Accelerate to over 19 mph (30 km/h).

or

- ☞ In the **Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "Panoramic visual aid".
- ☞ Select "Camera OFF".

- ! Check the cleanliness of the camera lenses regularly.

#### High pressure jet wash

When washing your vehicle, keep the nozzle at least 12 inches (30 cm) from the cameras.

## Park Assist

This system provides active assistance with parking: it detects a parking space then operates the steering system to park in this space.

With a **manual gearbox**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and clutch.

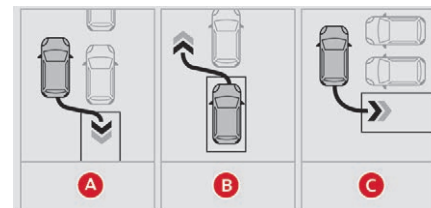
With an **automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8)**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes and gears.

During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

- ! This manoeuvring assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear throughout the manoeuvre. In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

- i The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.



The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

- A. Parallel parking.
- B. Exit from a parallel parking space.
- C. Bay parking.

**!** During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could block the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) - injury risk!

**i** When the Park Assist is active, it prevents the Stop & Start going into STOP mode. In STOP mode, activating Park Assist restarts the engine.

**i** The Park Assist system takes control of the assistance for a maximum of 4 manoeuvre cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles. If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly, you should then take control of the steering to carry out the manoeuvre.

**!** The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed in the instrument panel.



The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.



The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take control of the steering.

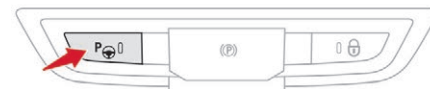
**!** You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

**i** The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away. If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

**!** Activation of Park Assist deactivates the Blind Spot Detection.

## Operation

### Assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres



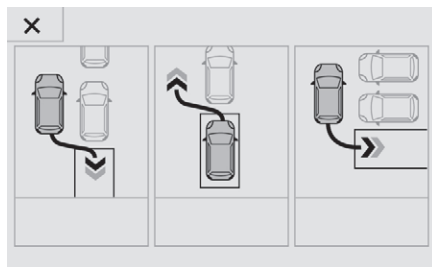
☞ When you have found a parking space.



☞ Press this button.

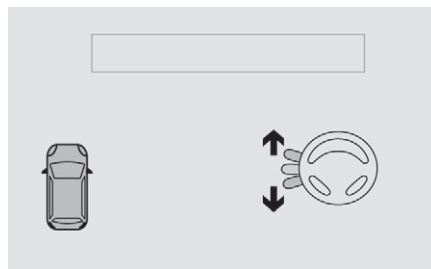


This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the system.

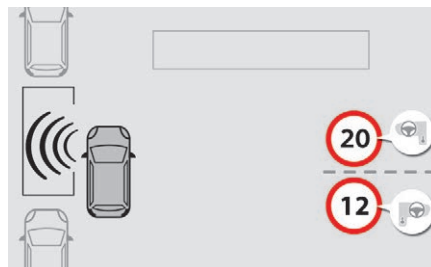


- Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select **"Enter parallel parking space"** on the touch screen.

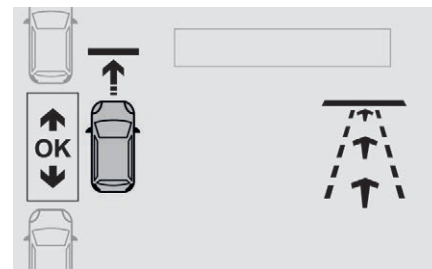
**i** To enter a parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



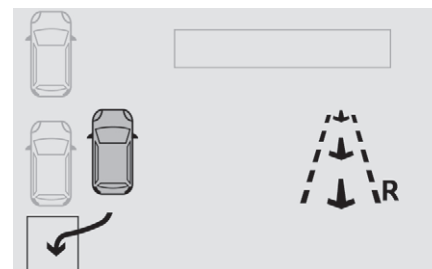
- Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



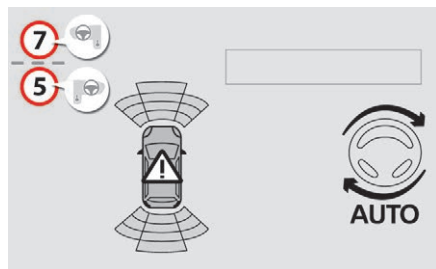
- Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



- Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



- Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



- The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



- At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

## Assistance in exiting a parallel parking space



- When you want to leave a parallel parking space, start the engine.



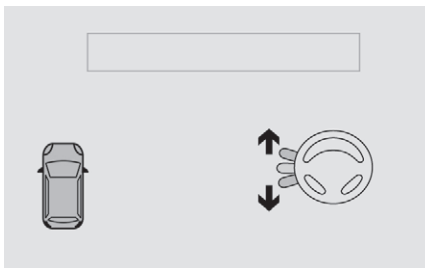
- With the vehicle stationary, press this button.



- This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the system.



- Press "Exit parking space" on the touch screen.

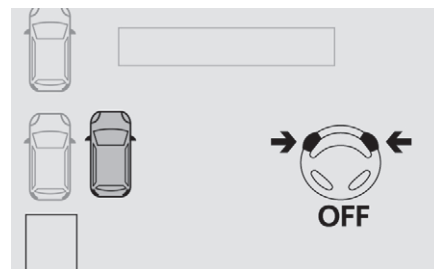


- Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.

- Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.



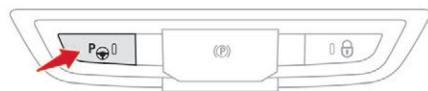
- The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.



- The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space.

At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

## Assistance with bay parking manoeuvres



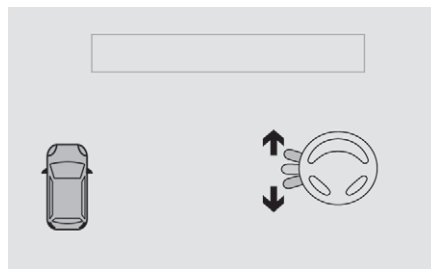
- Once you have found a parking area, press this button.



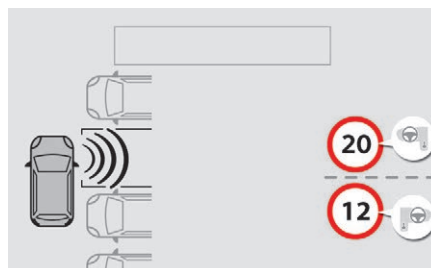
This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the system.



- Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select **"Enter bay parking space"** on the touch screen.

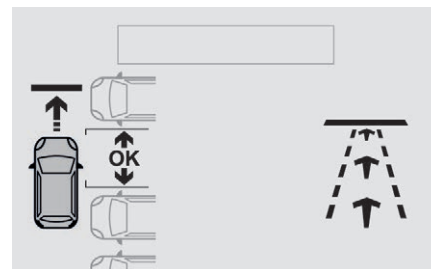


- Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.

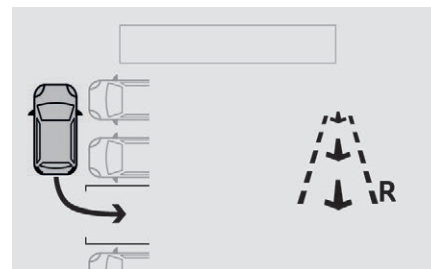


- Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

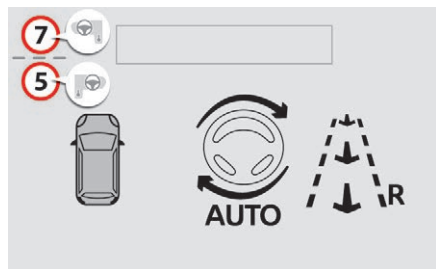
When several successive bays are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



- Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



- Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal. The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

During a bay parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 20 inches (50 cm) of an obstacle.

During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the reversing camera function may come into operation. It facilitates monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the instrument panel. For more information on the **Reversing camera**, refer to the corresponding section.

- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
- on opening the driver's door,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.

The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off and a message is displayed accompanied by an audible signal.

The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.

If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.

## Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.

The system is deactivated automatically:

- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,

## Switching off

The system is switched off automatically:

- when towing a trailer, connected electrically,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Operating faults



In the event of a fault, this warning lamp flashes for a few seconds, accompanied by an audible signal.

If the fault occurs during the use of the system, the warning lamp goes off.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.

Any object projecting beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (e.g. a ladder on the roof or a towball) will not be taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.



In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by dirt, ice or snow.

In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### High pressure jet washing

When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

CITROËN prefers **TOTAL**



# FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE WITH TOTAL QUARTZ LUBRICANTS



For more than 45 years, TOTAL and CITROËN have shared common values: excellence, creativity and technological innovation.

It is in this same spirit that TOTAL has developed a range of TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants adapted to CITROËN engines, making them even more fuel efficient and protective of the environment.

TOTAL and CITROËN test the reliability and the performance of their products during motorsport races in extreme conditions.

**Choose TOTAL QUARTZ lubricants to maintain your vehicle, this is your assurance of optimum durability and performance from your engine.**

## Compatibility of fuels

### Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

E5

Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.

E10

**i** The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

### Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

E5

E10

B7

B10

XTL

B20

B30

B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20

B20 or B30 fuel meeting standard EN16709 can be used in your Diesel engine. However, this use, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

B30

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).



The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

### Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could result in an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full. If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

### Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.

In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.

For any additional information, contact a dealer.

## Fuel

Fuel tank capacity: approximately 57 litres (petrol) or 55 litres (Diesel).

### Low fuel level



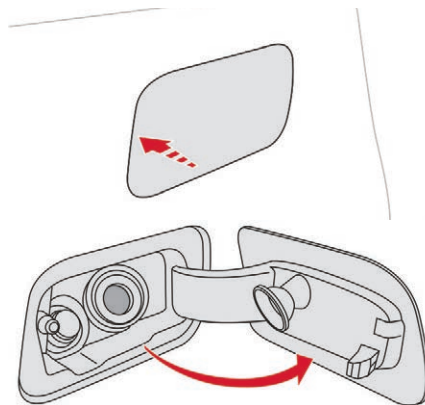
When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, accompanied by an audible warning, a message and the last bar of the fuel gauge lights up orange.

When it first comes on there remains **approximately 6 litres** of fuel in the tank. Until sufficient fuel has been added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible warning and a message. This audible warning and this message are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards "0". Refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out.

### Refilling

A self-adhesive label on the inner face of the filler flap reminds you of the type of fuel to use, depending on your engine. Additions of fuel must be of at least 5 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler flap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.



To refuel in complete safety:

- ☞ **You must switch off the engine.**
- ☞ With the vehicle unlocked, press the rear edge of the flap to open it (the filler cap is a part of it).
- ☞ Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct type of fuel for your vehicle.
- ☞ Insert the nozzle so as to push in the metal non-return flap.
- ☞ Make sure that the nozzle is pushed in as far as possible before starting to refuel (risk of blowback).

- ☞ Hold it in this position throughout the filling operation.
- ☞ Push the filler flap to close it.

**If you are filling your tank to the top, do not continue after the 3<sup>rd</sup> cut-off of the nozzle; this could cause malfunctions.**

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

**For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.**

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be introduced.

**! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.**

### Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

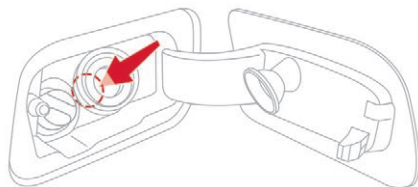
**! With Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition with the "START/STOP" button.**

## Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on the country of sale.)

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.

### Operation



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

**Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

**i** It remains possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank.

In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device and pour slowly.

### **i** Travelling abroad

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the CITROËN dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

## Snow chains



In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

**!** Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

**i** Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

## Installation tips

- ☞** If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞** Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞** Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞** Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞** Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**i** It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

**!** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Only use the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheels fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Chain type
205/60 R16	Maximum link size: 9 mm
205/55 R17	
225/45 R18	THULE K-Summit K34 model exclusively

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Towing device

### Load distribution

- ☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towed load must be reduced by 10% for every 1,000 metres of altitude.

**i** Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by CITROËN. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  
If the towing device is not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.  
**Important:** for versions equipped with the motorised tailgate with "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function, if a towing device other than a genuine CITROËN one is installed, it is imperative to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the detection system: risk of "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function failure.  
Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing system is used.

**!** Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

**Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).**

**!** Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

**!** **Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function**

To avoid unwanted opening of the tailgate when using the towing device:

- please deactivate this function in advance in your vehicle's configuration menu,
- or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.

## Blanking plug

In the event of recovery, it is essential to remove the blanking plug if your vehicle has one. To do this, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

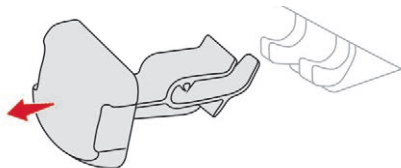
- i** The blanking plug is located behind the lower air intake grille.

## Towing system with quickly detachable towball

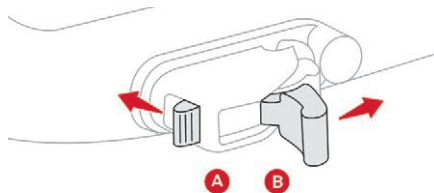
No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towbar system.

- i** Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

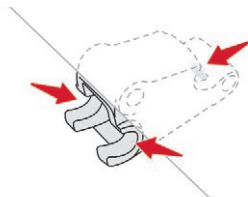
## Fitting



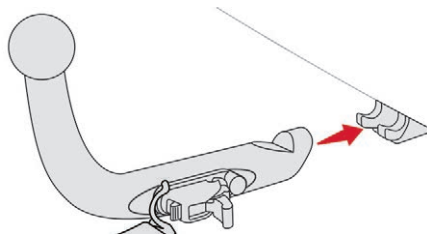
- Below the rear bumper, unclip and remove the protective cover from the carrier.



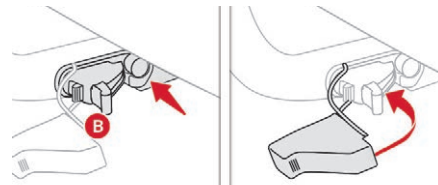
- Press and hold control **A** on the towball.
- Unlock the locking mechanism by pressing trigger **B**.



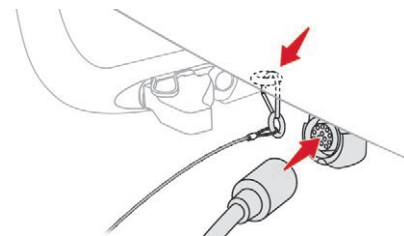
- Before fitting the towball, check that the contact points, shown by arrows, are clean. Use a clean and soft cloth.



- Fit the end of the towball into the carrier underneath the rear bumper, as far as it can go.



- Make sure that the towball is correctly secured in place. The two pins must be in contact with the carrier notches and trigger **B** must be returned to the "locking" position.
- Install the protective cover and clip it into place by turning it anti-clockwise.

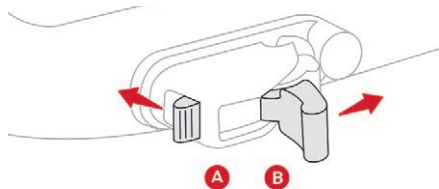


- Connect the trailer plug to the 13 pin socket next to the carrier.
- Secure the trailer by connecting its safety cable to the hoop on the carrier.

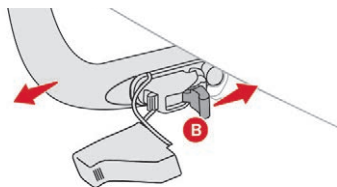
## Removing



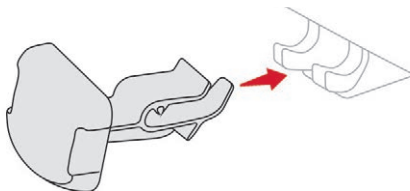
- ☞ Unclip and remove the protective cover, by turning it clockwise.



- ☞ Press and hold control **A** on the towball.
- ☞ Unlock the locking mechanism by pressing trigger **B**.



- ☞ Press trigger **B** and remove the towball by pulling it towards you.



- ☞ Clip the protective cover to the carrier underneath the bumper.

**!** If the towball is not locked, the trailer can detach. This may cause an accident. Always lock the towball in accordance with the descriptions. Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving. Remove the towball if it is not being used. Before starting the vehicle, check that the trailer lamps are working correctly. Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height. Maximum weight authorised on the towing device: 70 kg. For more information on the **Weights** of your vehicle, refer to the associated section. Carrier systems (box or bicycle carrier). Always comply with the maximum load authorised on the towing system: if it is exceeded, this system may detach from the vehicle and thus cause a serious accident.

## Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.

After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

## Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

**i** If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system.

## Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.

In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

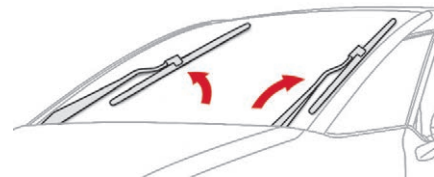
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

**!** A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Changing a wiper blade

### Before removing a front wiper blade



- ☞ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the wiper control stalk to position the wiper blades vertically on the windscreen.
- or
- ☞ More than one minute after switching off the ignition, straighten the arms manually.

## Removing

- ☞ Lift the corresponding wiper arm.
- ☞ Unclip the wiper blade and remove it.

## Refitting

- ☞ Position and clip the new wiper blade to the arm.
- ☞ Fold down the wiper arm carefully.

## After refitting a front wiper blade

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.
- ☞ Operate the wiper control stalk again to park the wiper blades.

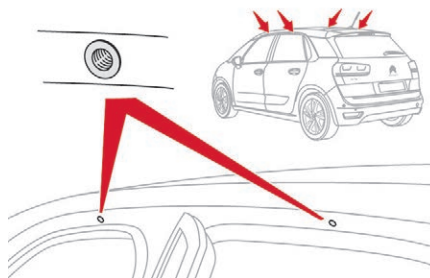
**!** The replacement of wiper arms should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Roof bars

**!** As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.

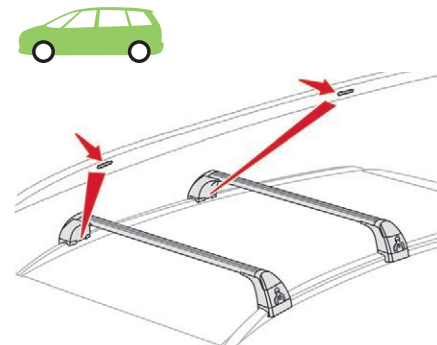
Observe the fitting instructions and the conditions of use in the user guide supplied with the bars.

## Version without longitudinal bars



When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located on the roof frame. These points are masked by the vehicle doors when closed. The roof bar fixings include a stud which should be fitted to the opening in each fixing point.

## Version with longitudinal bars



You must fit the transverse bars to the longitudinal bars at the fixing points indicated by engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

## Recommendations

- ☞ Distribute the load evenly, avoiding overloading on one side.
- ☞ Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
- ☞ Secure the load firmly and fit a warning flag if it overhangs the vehicle.
- ☞ Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds (the stability of the vehicle may be affected).
- ☞ Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

**i** Maximum load, distributed over the roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm: **80 kg**.

As this value may be changed, please verify the maximum load quoted in the user guide supplied with the roof bars. If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects which are longer than the vehicle.

**!** When carrying long objects, it is recommended that the motorised tailgate function is deactivated.

## Very cold climate screen(s)

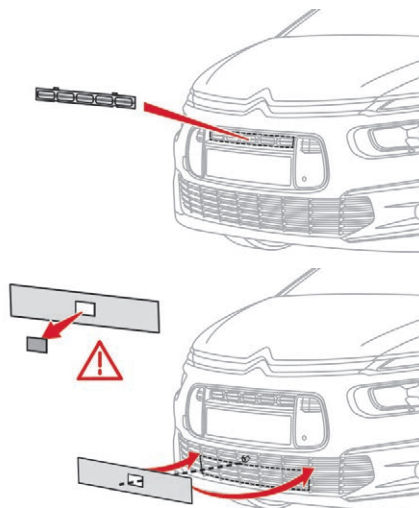
(Depending on the country where the product is sold.)

Removable screen(s) which prevent snow accumulating at the radiator cooling fan.

Depending on the version, you have one or two screens.

**!** Before fitting or removing a screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

## Fitting



- ☞ Offer up the corresponding very cold climate screen to the lower or upper section of the front bumper.
- ☞ Press around its edge to engage the fixing clips of each screen one by one.

## Removing

- ☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each of the fixings of each screen in turn.

**!** It is essential to remove the very cold climate screen (or screens):

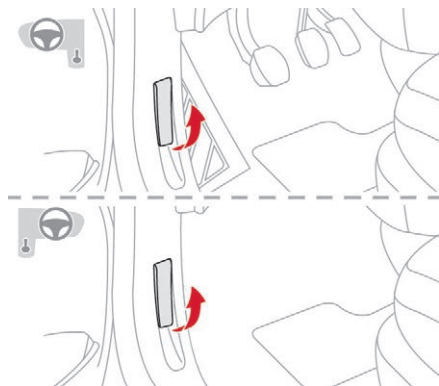
- when the exterior temperature exceeds 10°C,
- when towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

### **i** Vision 360 system

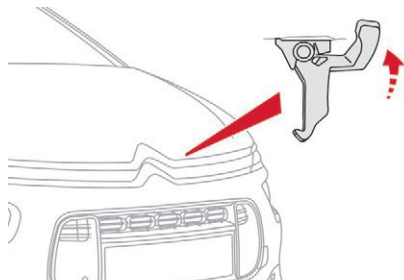
The pre-cut section must be removed before fitting the screen on the front bumper, in order to be able to release the camera.

When the very cold climate screen is present, the camera image is slightly altered.

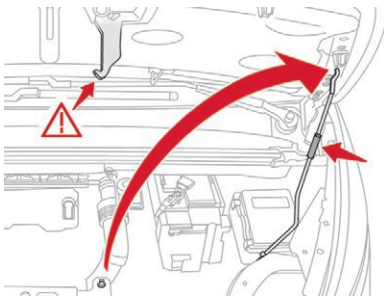
## Bonnet Opening



- ☞ Open the front left door.
- ☞ Pull the lever, located at the bottom of the door aperture, towards you.



- ☞ Lift the lever and raise the bonnet.



- ☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

## Closing

- ☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
- ☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is fully latched.

**i** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening of the bonnet when the left-hand front door is shut.

**!** When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.

When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch.

Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

**!** Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.



**!** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

**!** Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

## Engine compartment

This engine is shown as an example.

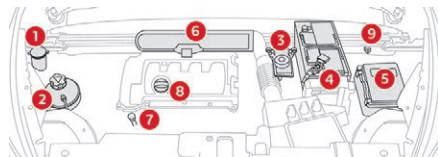
The positions of the following elements may change:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.
- Priming pump.

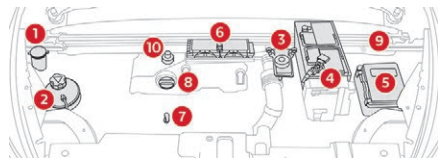
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point.
10. Priming pump\*

\* Depending on engine.

### Petrol



### Diesel



1. Screenwash and headlamp wash reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery/Fuses.

**!** The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure. All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated. If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The liquid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Used products

**!** Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin. Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground. Take used oil to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

## Engine oil level



The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched in using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

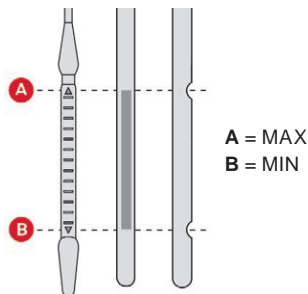
**i** To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). CITROËN recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

## Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

## Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.
- ☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ☞ Add more oil if necessary.
- ☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

**i** After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

## Engine oil change

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

## Brake fluid level



The fluid level should be close to the "MAX" mark. If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

## Fluid specification

The fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Coolant level



Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up the fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.

The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.

If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop. Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

**!** The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

## Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

## Screenwash/headlamp wash level low

### SERVICE

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the fluid reservoir low level is reached this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The warning lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled. The next time you stop, have the screenwash/headlamp wash reservoir topped up.

## Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)

### SERVICE

The additive reservoir low level is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and a message that the particle filter additive level is too low.

## Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Level of AdBlue

An alert is triggered once the reserve level is reached.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised as per regulations, you must top up with AdBlue.

For more information on **AdBlue and the SCR system**, and, in particular, topping up the tank, refer to the corresponding section.

## Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

**i** For more information and the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary.**

### Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary.**

**i** A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

### Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

### Particle filter (Diesel)

#### SERVICE

The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

**i** Traffic conditions permitting, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.  
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.  
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.  
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

## Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric parking brake



This system does not require any specific check. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.

Under-inflation increases fuel consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident! Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

**!** Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.

In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

## AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

## SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of around 12,500 miles (20,000 km). An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

**!** Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.

If the SCR system is defective, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.

In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after a running distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent engine starting.

In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

**i** For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and associated alerts, refer to the corresponding section.

### **i** Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.

The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

## Topping up the AdBlue®

Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top up the fluid between services, more particularly if an alert (warning lamps and a message) signals the requirement. You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

If you envisage topping up yourself, please read the following warnings carefully.

## Supply of AdBlue®

**i** It is recommended that the AdBlue® is topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

- !** In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® liquid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
  - Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
  - Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** You can also visit a petrol station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles (for those versions with access to the AdBlue® tank via the fuel filler flap).

**!** Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

## Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

**!** Never keep containers or bottles of AdBlue® in your vehicle.

## Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.

If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (at high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

**!** Keep AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container or bottle.

## Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above  $-11^{\circ}\text{C}$ . If not, due to freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

! In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the body, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.  
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

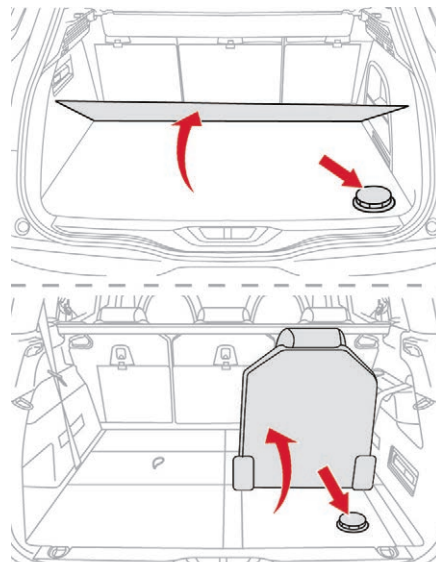
! Important: in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue, you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment.**  
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

### Access to the AdBlue® tank via the boot

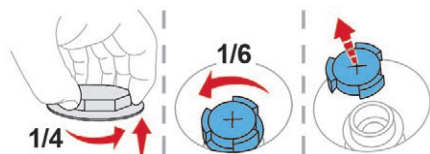
Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top up the fluid between services, as soon as an alert (warning lamps and a message) indicates it.  
You can go to a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  
**If you intend to do the topping-up yourself, read the following procedure carefully.**

The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies topping up.

☞ Press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.



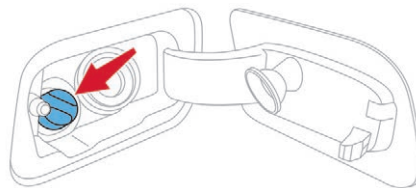
☞ To gain access to the AdBlue® tank, raise the floor of the boot or, for the 7-seater version, fold down the seat of the 3<sup>rd</sup> row on the right.



- ☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.
- ☞ Turn the blue cap anti-clockwise and lift it off.
- ☞ Obtain a non-drip bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, carefully read the instructions for use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.
- ☞ After filling, perform the same operations in reverse order.

### Access to the AdBlue® tank via the fuel filler flap

A blue cap under the fuel filler flap indicates access to the AdBlue® tank.



### Read the following procedure carefully to be able to top up properly.

- ☞ Press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.
  - ☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the AdBlue® blue filler cap anti-clockwise.
  - ☞ Obtain a bottle of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, carefully read the instructions for use on the label before pouring the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.
- Or
- ☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and fill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

### ! Important:

To prevent the AdBlue® tank from overflowing, it is recommended:

- ☞ To top up between 10 and 13 litres using containers of AdBlue®.

Or

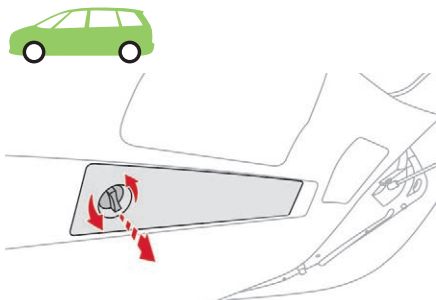
- ☞ If filling in a service station, stop after the third automatic shut-off of the nozzle.

- ☞ After refilling, carry out these same operations in reverse order.

In the event of a breakdown

## Warning triangle

This safety device is used in addition to the hazard warning lamps. Its presence in the vehicle may be mandatory.



A space is provided for the storage of the triangle in the interior trim of the tailgate.

**!** Before leaving your vehicle to set up and install the triangle, switch on the hazard warning lamps and put on your high visibility vest.

**i** Refer to the instructions on assembly/unfolding indicated in the user guide supplied with the triangle.

## Placing the triangle on the road

**☞** Place the triangle behind the vehicle, as required by the legislation in force in your country.

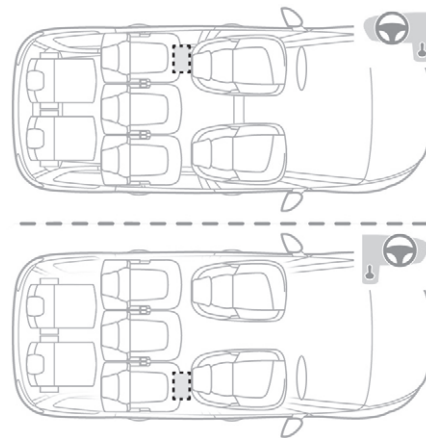
## Temporary puncture repair kit

**i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage. It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

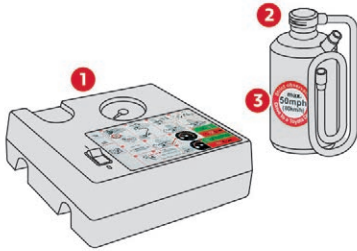
**i** The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to inflate a tyre after a puncture repair.

## Access to the kit



The kit is stowed in a bag inside the storage box located at the foot of the second row passenger seat.

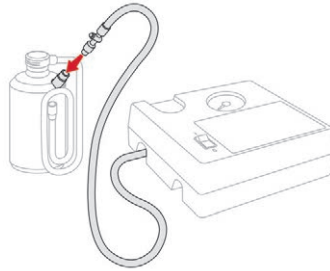
## Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with built-in pressure gauge.
2. Bottle of sealant, with built-in hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

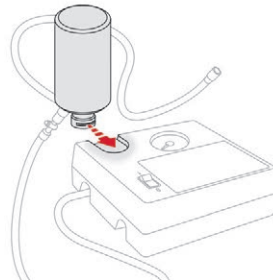
## Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



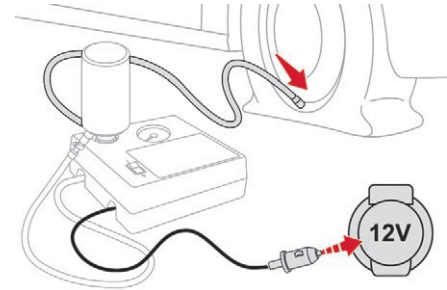
- ☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

**!** Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the notch provided on the compressor.

- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



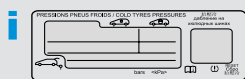
- ☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

**!** Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used.

- ☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

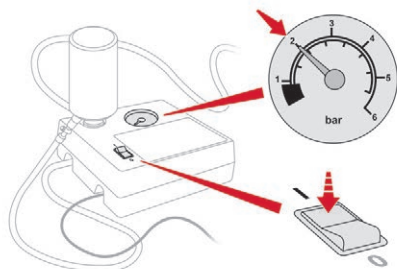


- ! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

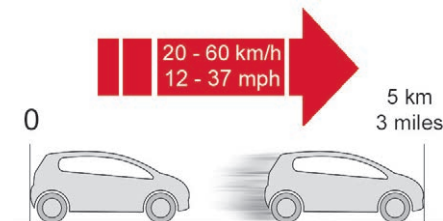


- ☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch to the "I" position until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

- ! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after about 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Place the switch in the "O" position.
- ☞ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Replace the cap on the valve.
- ☞ Remove the kit.
- ☞ Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

- ! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes. Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle. After use, do not discard the bottle in standard waste, take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- ☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- ☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

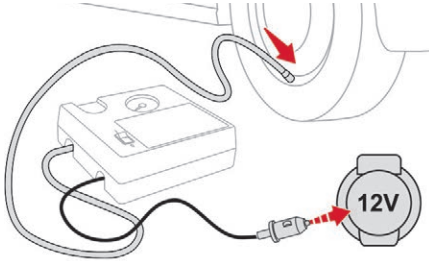
- ! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

## Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

- i You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

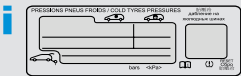
- ☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.

- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



- ☞ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "O" position.
- ☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition.

! Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

- ☞ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "O" position.
- ☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system. For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

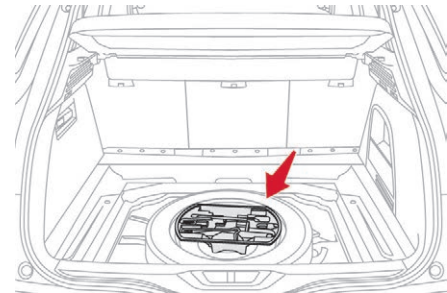
## Spare wheel



Procedure for changing a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

## Access to tooling

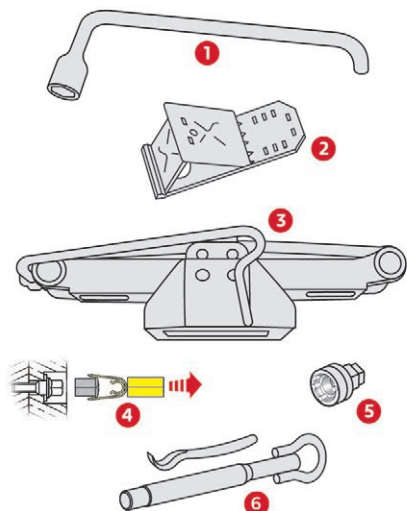


The tools are installed in the boot under the floor.

Remove the boot carpet to access them.

## List of tools

(Depending on equipment.)



1. Wheelbrace.  
For removing the wheel trim and the wheel fastening bolts.
2. Chock to immobilise the vehicle (except versions with manual gearbox).
3. Jack with integrated handle.  
Used to raise the vehicle.

4. Wheel bolt cover removal tool.  
Removes the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels.
5. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box).  
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
6. Towing eye and tool to open the front protective cover.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

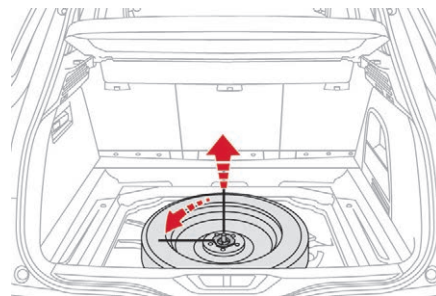
**!** All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.  
Do not use them for any other purposes.

**!** The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.  
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.  
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.  
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.  
The jack does not require any maintenance.

## Access to the spare wheel

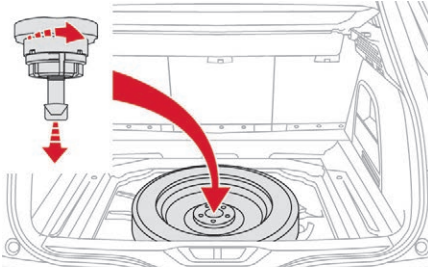
The spare wheel is located in the boot, under the floor.

## Taking out the wheel

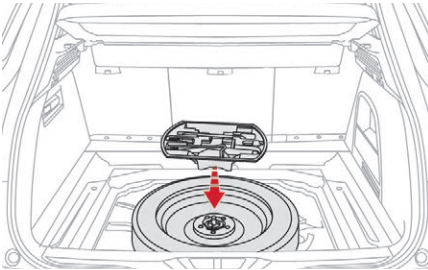


- ☞ Loosen the central nut.
- ☞ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

## Putting the spare wheel back in place



- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Loosen the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- ☞ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central nut clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel.

**i** Since the width of the spare wheel is smaller than the width of the wheels of the vehicle, in the event of a puncture, the punctured wheel must be stored in the boot.

## Spare wheel

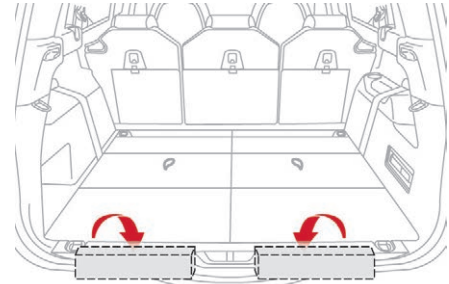


Procedure for changing a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre for the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

**i** Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

## Access to tooling

(Depending on version. The full set of tools is supplied with the spare wheel.)



One part of the tools can be accessed from the boot.

The immobilisation chock **2** as well as the wheelbrace extension **6** are stored in the right-hand section of the boot sill trim.

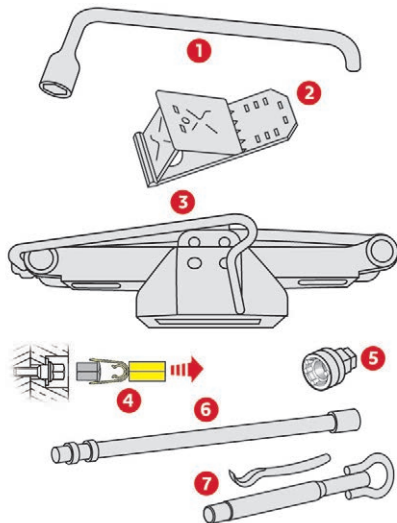
The wheelbrace **1** and the towing eye **7** are stored in the left-hand section of the boot sill trim.

The rest of the tools, the jack **3** and the wheel bolt cover removal tool **4**, are stored in a box attached to the spare wheel.

The assembly is secured under the vehicle by means of a winch carrier system.

## List of tools

(Depending on version. The full set of tools is supplied with the spare wheel.)



1. Wheelbrace.  
For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
2. Chock to immobilise the vehicle (except for versions with manual gearbox).
3. Jack with integrated handle.  
Used to raise the vehicle.

4. Wheel bolt cover removal tool.  
Removes the wheel bolt covers on alloy wheels.
5. Socket for wheel security bolts (stored in the glove box).  
For adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
6. Wheelbrace extension.  
For slackening/tightening the spare wheel winch cable carrier nut.
7. Towing eye and tool to open the front protective cover.

For more information on **Towing**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.  
Do not use them for any other purposes.

**!** The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre. Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.  
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it. The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.  
The jack does not require any maintenance.

## Wheel with wheel trim

**When removing the wheel**, first remove the trim using the wheelbrace 1 by pulling at the valve aperture.

**When refitting the wheel**, refit the trim starting by placing its notch facing the valve and press around its edge with the palm of your hand.

## Access to the spare wheel

(Depending on version.)

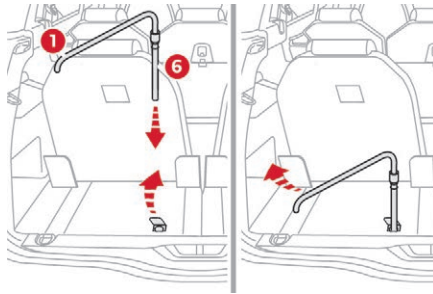


The spare wheel is supported by a winch carrier system underneath the vehicle.

**i** Only a "space-saver" type spare wheel may be fixed underneath the vehicle.

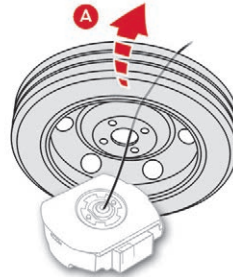
## Taking out the spare wheel

- ☞ Fold back the concertina board and install the third row seat, on the left-hand side (if your vehicle is equipped with it).
- ☞ Lift the pre-cut section of carpet to remove the fixing winch nut from the spare wheel.

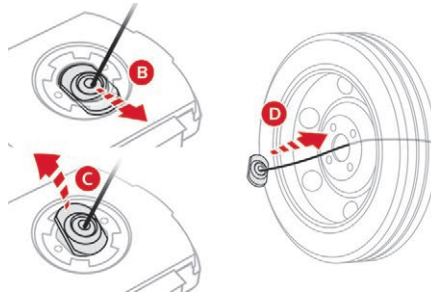


- ☞ With the extension 6 placed on the end of wheelbrace 1, "tighten" the nut to unwind the winch cable until the spare wheel is flat on the ground. Unwind as much as necessary in order to access the wheel easily.

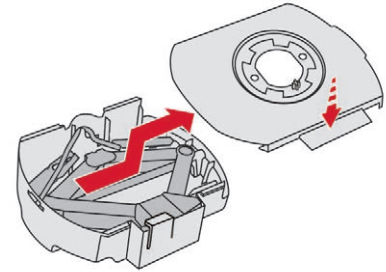
- ☞ Detach the assembly of wheel and box from the rear of the vehicle.



- ☞ Straighten the spare wheel to access tool box (A).



- ☞ Detach the connecting piece from the cover of the tool box (B – C).
- ☞ Pass the connecting piece through the wheel hub to release it (D).



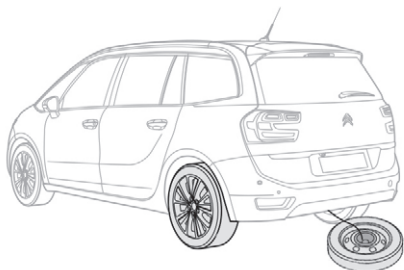
- ☞ Press the tab, slide the lid on the box up to the middle and remove it to access the other tools (jack and alloy wheel bolt cover removal tool).

## Tool storage

- ☞ Put the tools back in the box and store the box in the boot of the vehicle.
- ☞ Reel in the winch by turning the key in the clockwise direction: once the cable is completely reeled in, you should no longer feel any resistance.
- ☞ Store the rest of the tools in the storage areas in the boot.

**!** The wheel with the punctured tyre cannot be fitted under the vehicle. It must be stored in the boot. Use a cover to protect the interior of the boot.

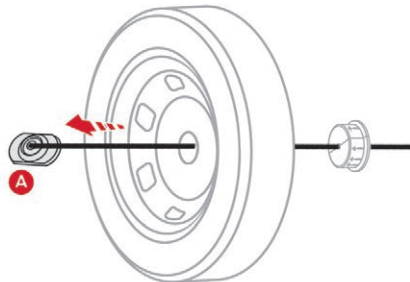
## Putting the winch carrier and spare wheel back in place



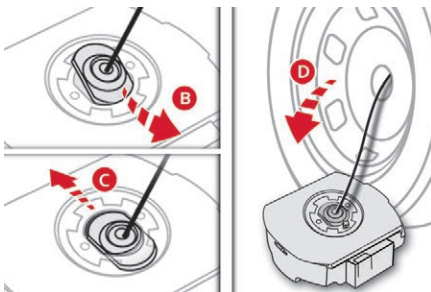
- ☞ Place the appropriate tools in the box and close the cover again.
- ☞ Place the tool box on the ground.

**!** When the spare wheel is fitted in place of a wheel with a punctured tyre, the winch and tool box must be refitted underneath the vehicle again before restarting.

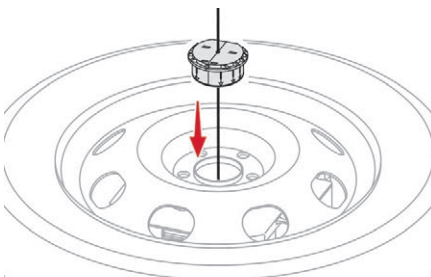
- ☞ Straighten the wheel.



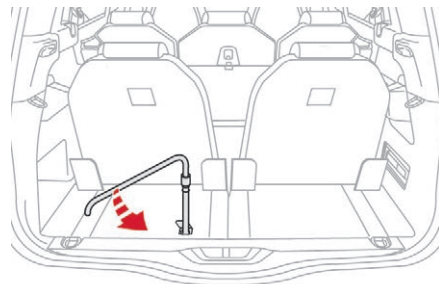
- ☞ Pass the connecting piece through the wheel hub (A).



- ☞ Insert the connecting piece into the tool box hole (B – C).
- ☞ Centre and position the spare wheel on the tool box (D).



- ☞ Insert the centring guide into the wheel hub.
- ☞ Place the wheel/box assembly beneath the rear of the vehicle.



- ☞ Replace the wheel/box assembly beneath the vehicle by "loosening" the winch control nut with the wheelbrace and extension.
- ☞ Tighten fully. When the cable is completely reeled in, turning the nut no longer encounters resistance.
- ☞ Check that the wheel is properly flattened against the floor.

## Removing a wheel

### **Parking the vehicle**

Stop the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

Apply the parking brake, unless it is programmed in automatic mode; switch off the ignition and put the vehicle into first gear\* so as to block the wheels.

Check that the braking warning lamp and the **P** warning lamp in the parking brake control lever come on.

For more safety, position the chock **2** against the wheel opposite the one you are replacing.

Make absolutely certain that all the occupants have left the vehicle and are waiting in a safe area.

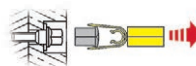
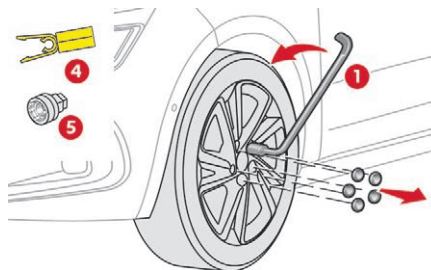
Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

### **Do not use:**

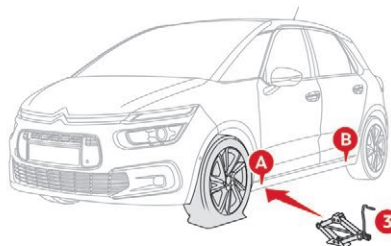
- the jack for any other purpose than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.

\* position **P** for the automatic gearbox

### List of operations

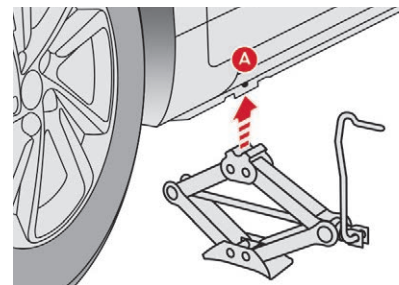


- ☞ Remove the bolt cover(s) using the tool **4** (according to equipment).
- ☞ Fit security socket **5** on wheelbrace **1** to slacken the security bolt (according to equipment).
- ☞ Slacken the other bolts (no more than a 1/4 turn) using the wheelbrace **1** only.

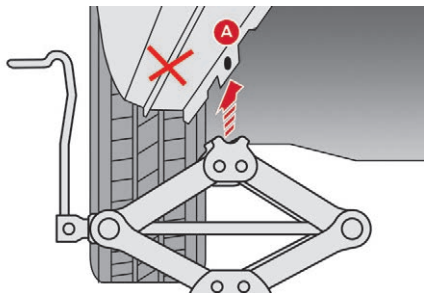


- ☞ Place the foot of the jack **3** on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front **A** or rear **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.

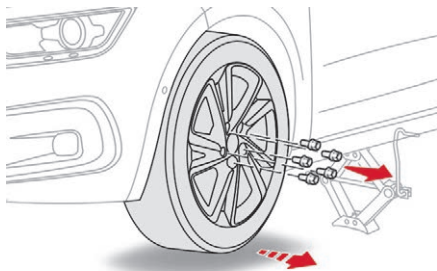
**!** Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse – Risk of injury!  
Ensure that the jack is positioned only at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the vehicle's contact surface is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle could be damaged and/or the jack could collapse – Risk of injury!



- ☞ Extend the jack **3** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B** used, with contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.

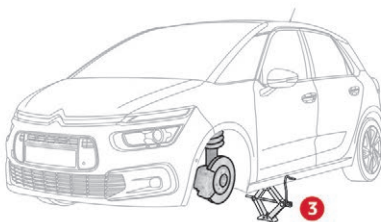


- ☞ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



- ☞ Remove the bolts and keep them in a clean place.
- ☞ Remove the wheel.

## Fitting a wheel

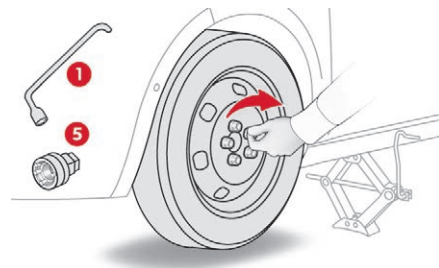


- ! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.

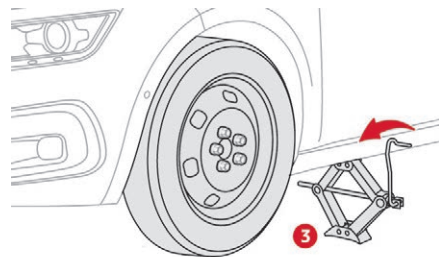
- i The jack does not require any maintenance.

- i The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

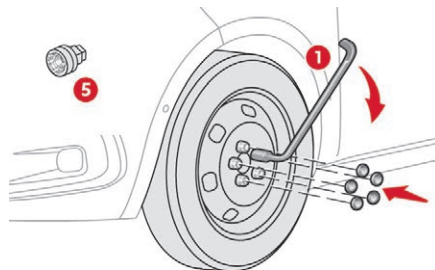
## List of operations



- ☞ Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- ☞ Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- ☞ Pre-tighten the security bolt using wheelbrace 1 fitted with security socket 5 (according to equipment).
- ☞ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace 1 only.



- ☞ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ☞ Fold jack 3 and detach it.



- ☞ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **1** fitted with the security socket **5** (according to equipment).
- ☞ Tighten the other bolts using wheelbrace **1** only.
- ☞ Refit the wheel bolt cover(s) (according to equipment).
- ☞ Store the tools in the box.

### **i Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel**

If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.

## After changing a wheel

### **! With a "space-saver" type spare wheel**

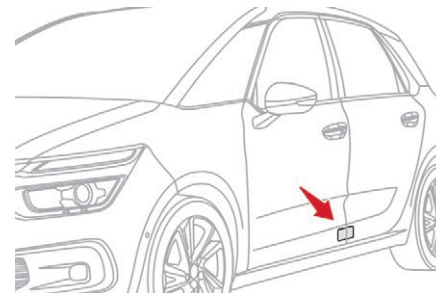


The following is recommended:

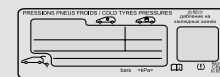
- deactivate some driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control with Stop function, etc.), as indicated on the label attached to the wheel,
- do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h).

**!** Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the tightness of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked.

Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.



**i** The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



## Changing a bulb

**!** The lamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

**!** Changing a bulb should only be done after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes (risk of serious burns).

- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.

Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

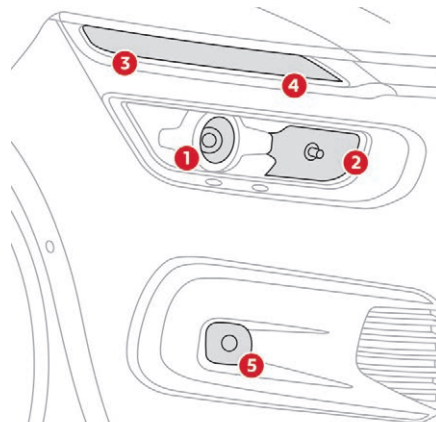
**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

**!** **Risk of electrocution**  
Xenon bulbs (D5S-25W) must be replaced by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** **Light-emitting diodes (LED)**  
For the replacement of this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

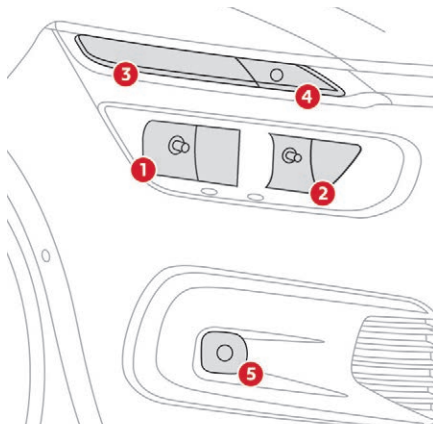
## Front lamps

### Model with xenon headlamps



1. Dipped beam headlamps (D5S-25W).
2. Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).
3. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (6 light-emitting diodes – LEDs).
4. Direction indicators (6 light-emitting diodes – LEDs).
5. Foglamps (H11-55W).

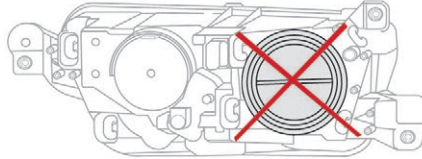
## Model with halogen headlamps



1. Dipped beam headlamps (H7-55W).
2. Main beam headlamps (H7-55W).
3. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (4 light-emitting diodes – LEDs).
4. Direction indicators (PWY24W). (light emitting diodes – LEDs).
5. Foglamps (H11-55W).

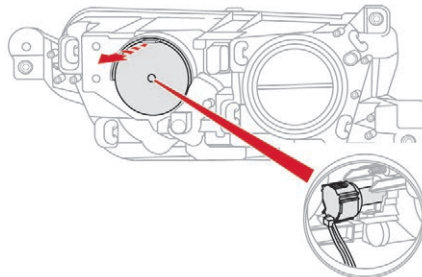
**i** For bulbs with lugs (type H7, etc.), take care to observe their correct installation so as to ensure the best lighting performance.

## Directional dipped beam headlamps (xenon model)



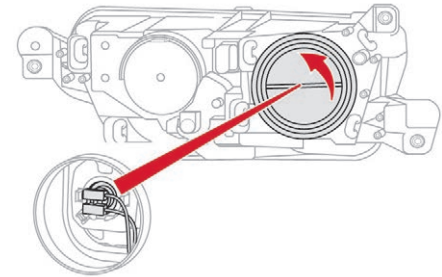
**!** Replacement of D5S xenon bulbs must be done by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as there is a risk of electrocution.  
In case of a fault in one of the two D5S bulbs, it is recommended to also replace the bulb on the opposite side.

## Main beam headlamps (xenon model)



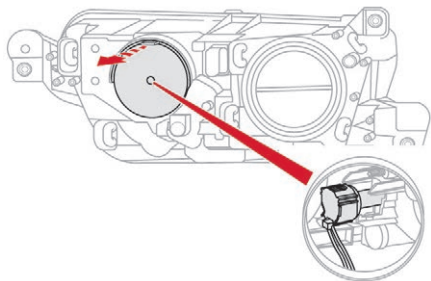
- Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
  - Push the connector.
  - Pull the bulb to change it.
- To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

## Dipped beam headlamps (halogen model)



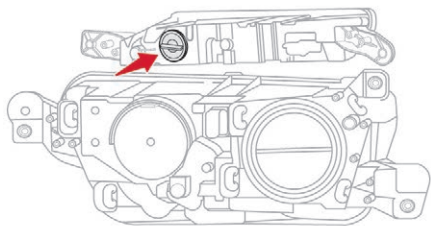
- Turn the protective plastic cover to remove it.
  - Disconnect the connector.
  - Unhook the clips.
  - Pull the bulb to change it.
- To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

## Main beam headlamps (halogen model)



- ☞ Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
  - ☞ Push the connector.
  - ☞ Pull the bulb to change it.
- To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

## Direction indicators



**i** Quicker flashing of the direction indicator light (left or right) indicates that one of the bulbs on the corresponding side has failed.

The direction indicator bulb is located below the headlamp.

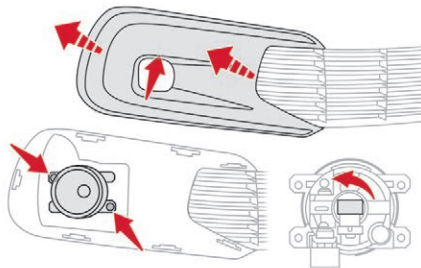
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise a quarter of a turn.
- ☞ Remove the bulb holder.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

## Direction indicators (light-emitting diodes – LEDs)

For the replacement of this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

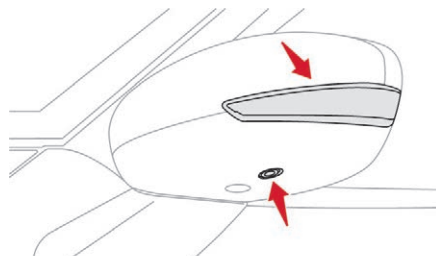
## Front foglamps



- ☞ Unclip the finisher by pulling at the top.
- ☞ Remove the two screws to remove the unit.
- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn.
- ☞ Remove the bulb holder.
- ☞ Change the faulty bulb.

To reassemble, proceed in reverse order, pressing on the finisher to refit it.

## Door mirror spotlamps

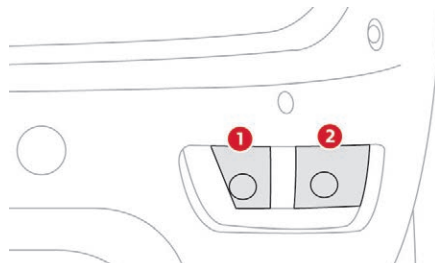


You should contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of the light-emitting diode – LED.

## Integrated direction indicator side repeaters

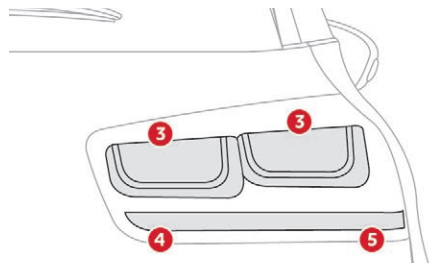
You should contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

## Rear lamps



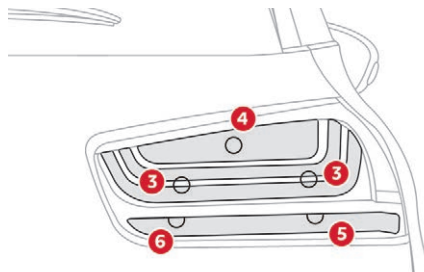
1. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
2. Sidelamps/foglamps (P21/5W).

## Model with LED lamps



3. Brake lamps/sidelamps (light-emitting diodes – LEDs).
4. Reversing lamps (W16W).
5. Direction indicators (PY21W).

## Model with bulb lamps



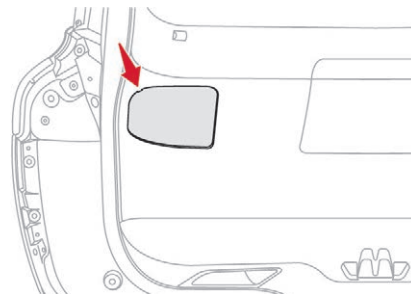
3. Sidelamps (5W5).
4. Brake lamps (P21/W).
5. Direction indicators (WY16W).
6. Reversing lamp (W16W).

## Light-emitting diodes – LEDs

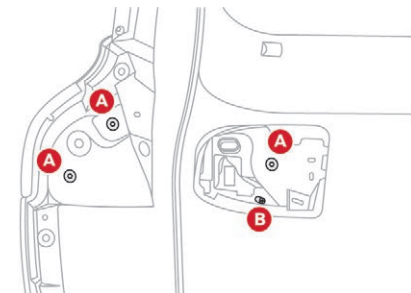
**i** For replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Tailgate lamps

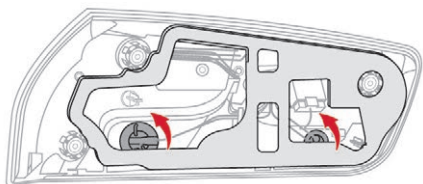
- ☞ Identify the faulty bulb.
- ☞ Open the boot.



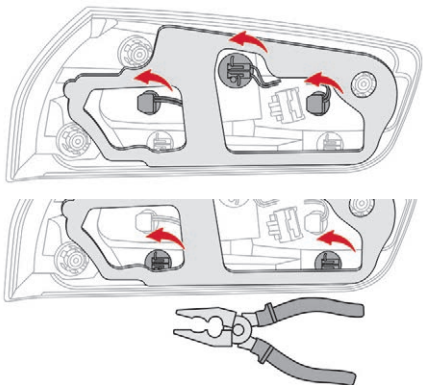
- ☞ Remove the access cover.



- ☞ Remove the three lamp fixing screws **A**.
- ☞ Disconnect the connector.
- ☞ Carefully remove the lamp from the outside by pushing the retaining clip **B**.



### Model with LED lamps



### Model with bulb lamps

For the replacement of the bulbs of the reversing lamp and of the direction indicators:

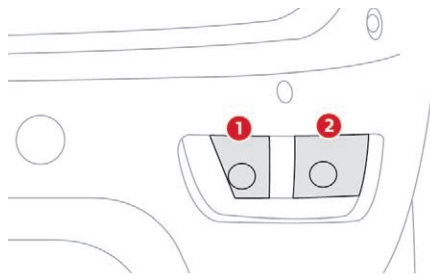
- ☞ Use the "universal" type tweezers to turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

For the replacement of the bulbs of the sidelamps and of the brake lamps:

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

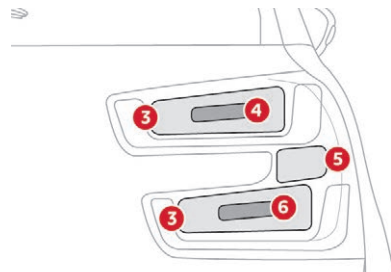
To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

## Rear lamps



1. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
2. Sidelamps/foglamps (P21/5W).

## Model with LED lamps

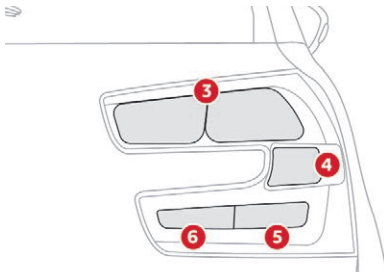


3. Sidelamps (light emitting diodes – LEDs).
4. Brake lamps (light emitting diodes – LEDs).
5. Direction indicators (PY21W).
6. Reversing lamps (light emitting diodes – LEDs).

## Light-emitting diodes – LEDs

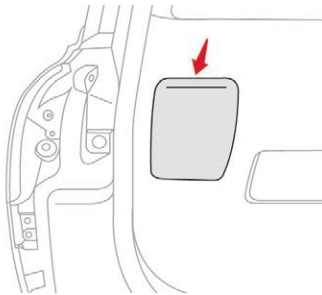
**i** For replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Model with bulb lamps



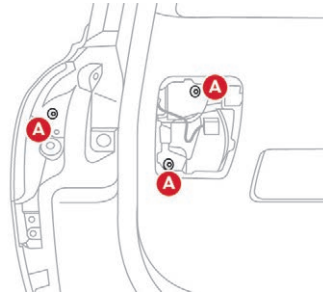
3. Sidelamps (W5W).
4. Brake lamps/sidelamps (P21W).
5. Direction indicators (WY16W).
6. Reversing lamp. (W16W).

## Tailgate lamp



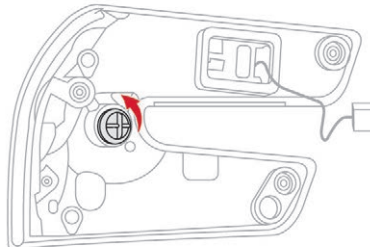
Identify the faulty bulb.

- ☞ Open the boot.
- ☞ Remove the access cover.

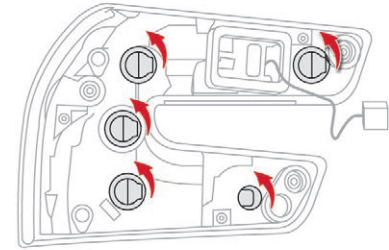


- ☞ Remove the three lamp fixing screws A.
  - ☞ Disconnect the connector.
  - ☞ Carefully remove the lamp from its location.
  - ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn anti-clockwise and remove it.
  - ☞ Change the bulb.
- To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

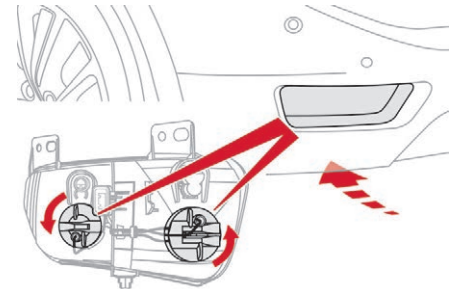
## Model with LED lamps



## Model with bulb lamps



## Direction indicators, sidelamps and foglamps



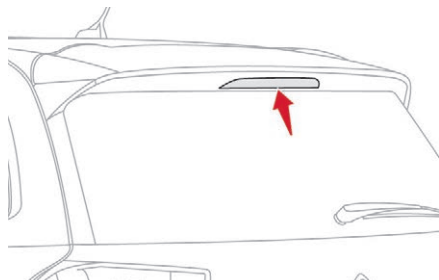
For access, pass your hand under the bumper.

- ☞ Turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn and remove it.
- ☞ Change the bulb.

To reassemble, proceed in reverse order.

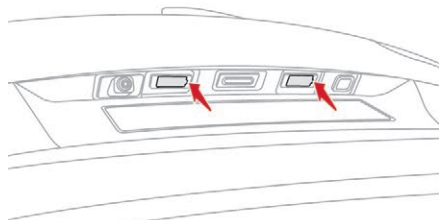
You can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for the replacement of these bulbs.

### Third brake lamp (light-emitting diodes – LEDs)



For the replacement of this type of lamp, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Number plate lamps (W5W)

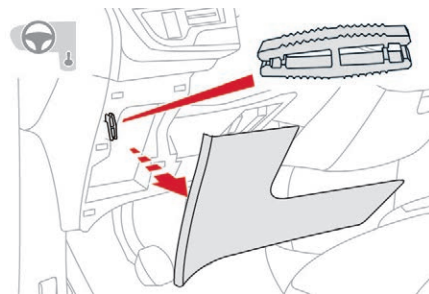


- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
  - ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
  - ☞ Remove the lens.
  - ☞ Change the faulty bulb.
- To refit, press on the lens to clip it in place.

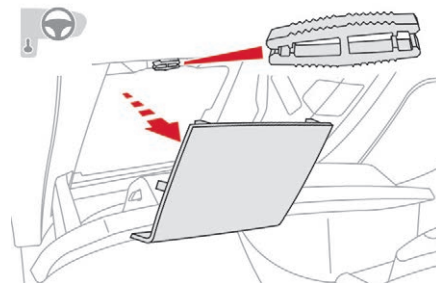
## Changing a fuse

### Access to tooling

The extraction tweezers are fitted in the dashboard fuses compartment.



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top right, then left,
- ☞ Completely remove the cover by carefully pulling it in the axis indicated by the arrow,
- ☞ Remove the tweezers.



- ☞ Open the glove box
- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Completely remove the cover by carefully pulling it in the axis indicated by the arrow.
- ☞ Remove the tweezers.

## Changing a fuse

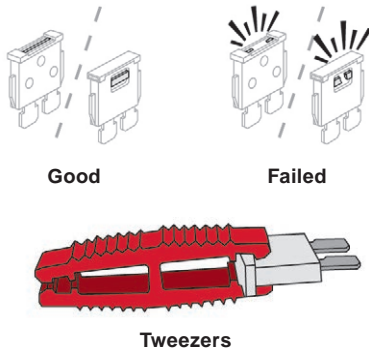
Before changing a fuse, it is necessary to:

- ☞ identify the cause of the failure and correct it,
- ☞ switch off all electrical loads,
- ☞ immobilise the vehicle and switch off the ignition,
- ☞ identify the defective fuse using the existing allocation tables and diagrams.

To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament,
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fuse fails again soon after replacement, have the vehicle's electrical system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** Replacing a fuse not shown in the tables may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Installing electrical accessories

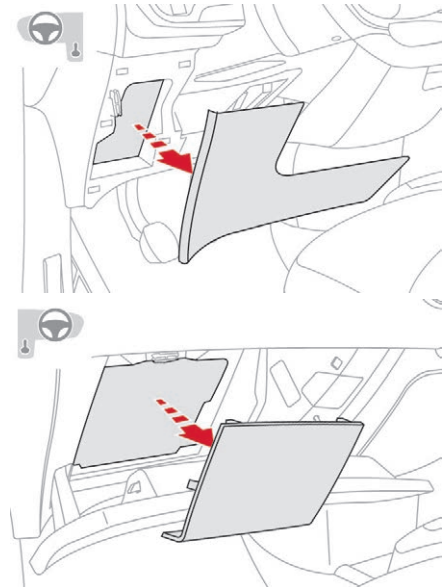
**i** Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

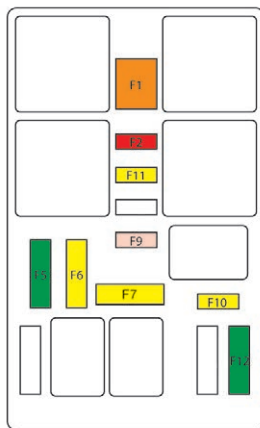
**!** CITROËN will not accept responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its instructions, in particular when the combined consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

## Fuses in the dashboard

The two fuseboxes are located in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

## Access to the fuses





## Fuse tables

### Fusebox 1

Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F1	40 A	Heated rear screen.
F2	20 A	Electric door mirrors.
F5	30 A	Panoramic glass sunroof blind.
F6	20 A	12 V, rear multimedia sockets.
F7	20 A	230 V socket.
F9	25 A	Heated seats.
F10	20 A	Trailer interface unit.
F11	20 A	Air conditioning blower.
F12	30 A	Electric window motor.



Fusebox 2

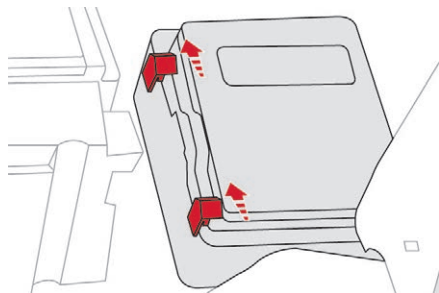
Fuse N°	Rating	Functions
F7	10 A	12 V boot socket, rear multimedia.
F8	20 A	Rear windscreen wiper.
F10	30 A	Locks.
F17	5 A	Instrument panel.
F18	5 A	Automatic gearbox selector.
F21	3 A	START/STOP button.
F22	3 A	Rain and sunshine sensor, windscreen camera.
F24	5 A	Parking aid, panoramic visual aid.
F27	5 A	Automatic gearbox.
F29	20 A	Audio and telematics systems.
F32	15 A	12 V sockets.
F35	5 A	Headlamp beam height adjustment, heated rear screen, radar.
F36	5 A	Lighting: glove box, central storage, reading lamps, courtesy lamps.

In the event of a breakdown

## Fuses in the engine compartment

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

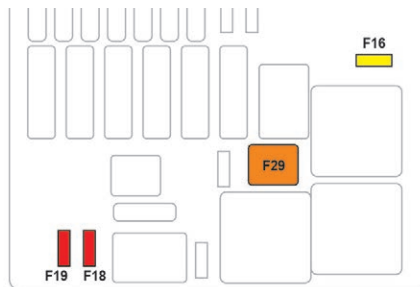
### Access to the fuses



- ☞ Unclip the cover by pushing the 2 red latches towards the back of the vehicle.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Table of fuses

Fuse no.	Rating	Functions
F16	20 A	Headlamp wash.
F18	10 A	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	10 A	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F29	40 A	Wipers.



## 12 V battery

### General points

#### Lead-acid starter batteries

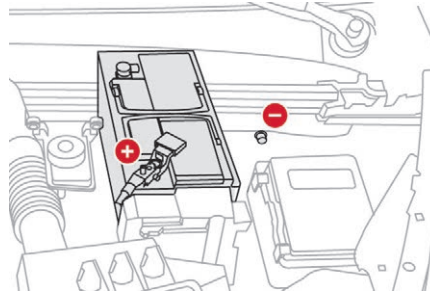


Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead. They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste. Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.

### Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.

For access to the (+) terminal:

- ☞ release the bonnet using the interior lever, then the exterior safety catch,
- ☞ raise the bonnet and secure it with its stay,
- ☞ lift the plastic cover for access to the (+) terminal.

The battery (-) terminal is not accessible.

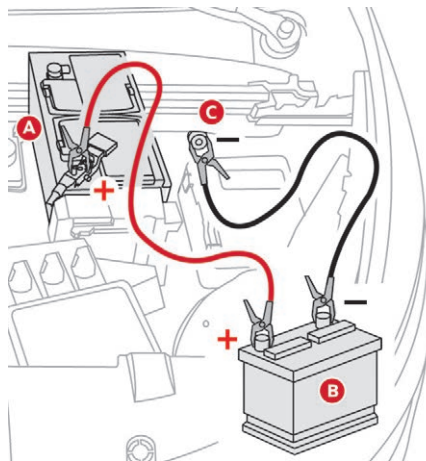
A remote earth point is located on the upper part of the bonnet (next to the battery).

### Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is discharged, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.



Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger. Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster. Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery. The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other. Switch off the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.). Ensure that the jump lead cables do not pass close to moving parts of the engine (cooling fan, belts, etc.). Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow) then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.

- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait until the engine returns to idle then disconnect the jump lead cables in the reverse order.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

**i** Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

## Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

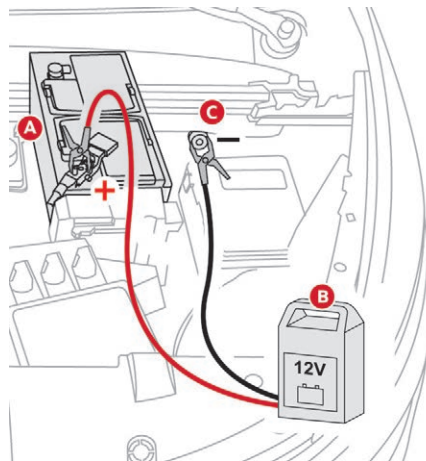
- if you only use your vehicle for short journeys,
- if the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

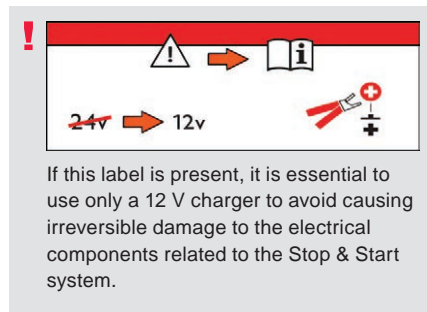
**!** Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.  
Never reverse polarities.

**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.



- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).
- ☞ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- ☞ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ☞ Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Connect charger **B** cables as follows:
  - the (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
  - the (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.

- ☞ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



- ! Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!
- If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

## Disconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.

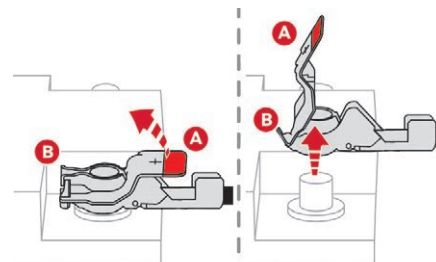
Before disconnecting the battery:

- ☞ close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof),
- ☞ switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- ☞ switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, detach the (+) terminal only.

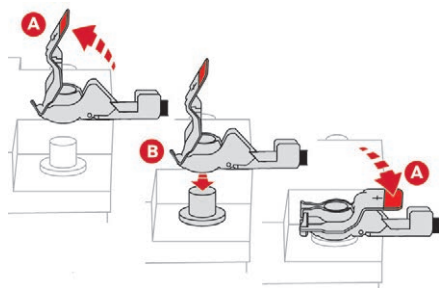
## Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- ☞ Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

### Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Refit the open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

**!** Do not force the lever as locking will not be possible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

### Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise (depending on version):

- the remote control key,
- the electric blind(s),
- etc.

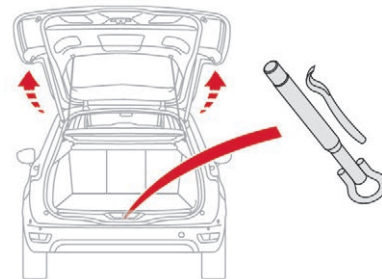
**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.  
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

## Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using the towing eye.

### Access to tooling



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.

The tool for opening the front protective cover is fixed to the towing eye.

To access it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ lift the floor and remove it,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the holder.

### **! General recommendations**

Observe the legislation in force in your country.

Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is greater than that of the towed vehicle.

The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.

When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar: rope and straps are prohibited.

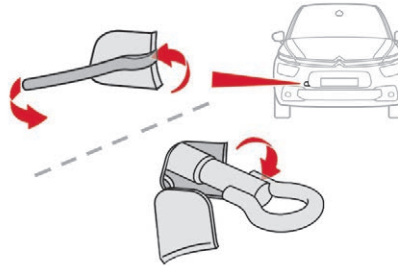
The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or fast road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

## **Towing your vehicle**



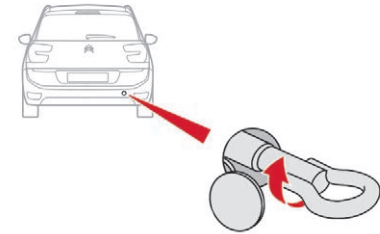
- ☞ On the front bumper, unclip the cover by using the tool fixed on the ring.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Move the gear lever into neutral (position **N** for an automatic gearbox).

**!** Failure to follow this instruction may cause damage to some components (braking, driveline, etc.) and the absence of braking assistance when the engine is restarted.

- ☞ Unlock the steering by turning the ignition key one notch and release the parking brake.

- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

## **Towing another vehicle**



- ☞ On the rear bumper, unclip the cover by pressing at the bottom.
- ☞ Screw the towing eye in fully.
- ☞ Install the towbar.
- ☞ Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.
- ☞ Move off gently, drive slowly and for a short distance.

## Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

**i** For more information on **Diesel misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying but start the procedure again from the beginning.

### BlueHDi 100 S&S, BlueHDi 115/120 S&S and BlueHDi 135/150 S&S engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- ☞ Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Repeat the operation 10 times.
- ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.

### BlueHDi 130 S&S and BlueHDi 160 S&S engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
  - ☞ Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
  - ☞ Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
  - ☞ Operate the starter to run the engine.
- If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

- ☞ Put the cover back in place and clip it in.
- ☞ Close the bonnet.

### Other engines

- ☞ Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- ☞ Open the bonnet.
- ☞ If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.



- ☞ Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance on the first press).
- ☞ Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- ☞ If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.

## Engine technical data and towed loads

### Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

**i** The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

**!** When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

**!** Towing using a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect roadholding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of approximately 60 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

**i** If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

## Engines and towed loads – PETROL

Petrol engines	PureTech 110 S&S**	PureTech 130 S&S**	PureTech 130 S&S***	PureTech 130 S&S**	PureTech 130 S&S***
<b>Gearbox</b>	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (automatic 6-speed)	EAT8 (automatic 8-speed)
<b>Code</b>	EB2DTS	EB2DTS	EB2ADTS	EB2DTS	EB2ADTS
<b>Model codes</b>	3D	3D...3E... 3A ...	3D... 3E... 3A ...	3D... 3E... 3A ...	3D... 3E... 3A ...
	HNY... M/1S – M/2SM	HNY... M/1S – M/2SM	HNS...P	HNY... T/1S – T/2S	HNS...R
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199	1,199
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	96	96	96	96
Fuel	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,130	1,270-1,050- 1,050	-	1,270-1,050- 1,050	-
Unbraked trailer	640	640-647-648	-	640-647-648	-
Recommended nose weight	70	70	-	70	-

\*\* Euro 6.1 engine

**3D...:** CITROËN C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).

\*\*\* Euro 6.2 engine

**3E...:** CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer  
(5 seats).**3A...:** CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer  
(7 seats).

<b>Petrol engines</b>	<b>THP 150/160**</b>	<b>THP 165 S&amp;S**</b>	<b>THP 165 S&amp;S** (For Israel)</b>	<b>PureTech 180 S&amp;S***</b>
<b>Gearbox</b>	EAT6 (automatic 6-speed)	EAT6 (automatic 6-speed)	EAT6 (automatic 6-speed)	EAT8 (automatic 8-speed)
<b>Code</b>	EP6FDTM	EP6FDT	EP6FDTM	EP6FADTXD
<b>Model codes</b>	3D...3E... 3A ...	3D...3E... 3A ...	3D...3E... 3A ...	3E... 3A ...
	5GX – 5GY... A-A/1-A/2-A/D- A/1D- A/2D-Y-Y/1-Y/2	5GZT/S	5GY... A/S – A/1S – A/2S	5GF...R
Cubic capacity (cm <sup>3</sup> )	1,598	1,598	1,598	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	110/121	121	121	132
Fuel	Unleaded/Alcohol	Unleaded	Unleaded	Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	800	1,400 - 1,250-1,200	1,400 - 1,250-1,200	-
Unbraked trailer	600	685 - 690-690	685 - 690-690	-
Recommended nose weight	70	70	70	-

\*\* Euro 6.1 engine

\*\*\* Euro 6.2 engine

**3D...:** CITROËN C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).

**3E...:** CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).

**3A...:** CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (7 seats).

## Engines and towed loads – DIESEL

Diesel engines	HDi 115*	HDi 115*	BlueHDi 100 S&S**
Gearbox	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)
Code	DV6C	DV6C	DV6FD
Model codes	3D...3E... 3A...	3D...3E... 3A...	3D...3E... 3A...
	9HC8	9HC8/1	BHY... 6/1S – 6/2SM
Cubic capacity (cm³)	1,560	1,560	1,560
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	85	85	73
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400-1,240-1,200	800	1,200-1,000-1,000
Unbraked trailer	680-690-690	685-695-695	645-659-660
Recommended nose weight	70	70	70

\* Euro 5 engine

\*\* Euro 6.1 engine

.../S: e-HDi model equipped with Stop &amp; Start.

3D... : CITROËN C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).

3E... : CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).

3A... : CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (7 seats).

Diesel engines	BlueHDi 115/120 S&S**	BlueHDi 130 S&S***	BlueHDi 130 S&S***
Gearbox	EAT6 (automatic 6-speed)	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)
Code	DV6FCD	DV5RC	DV5RC
Model codes	3D...3E... 3A...	3D...3E... 3A...	3D...3E... 3A...
	BHZ – BHX... T/1S – T/2S	YHZ... P/S – P/1S – P/2S	YHZ... P/S – P/1S – P/2S
Cubic capacity (cm³)	1,560	1,499	1,499
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	85/88	96	96
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400-1,200-1,200	-	-
Unbraked trailer	660-675-675	-	-
Recommended nose weight	70	-	-

\*\* Euro 6.1 engine

\*\*\* Euro 6.2 engine

.../S: e-HDi model equipped with Stop & Start.

3D... : CITROËN C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).

3E... : CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).

3A... : CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (7 seats).

Diesel engines	BlueHDi 130 S&S***	BlueHDi 135/150 S&S**	BlueHDi 135/150 S&S**	BlueHDi 160 S&S***
Gearbox	EAT8 (automatic 8-speed)	BVM6 (manual 6-speed)	EAT6 (automatic 6-speed)	EAT8 (automatic 8-speed)
Code	DV5RC	DW10FD	DW10FD	DW10FCC
Model codes	3D...3E... 3A...	3D...3E... 3A...	3D...3E... 3A...	3D...3E... 3A...
	YHZ...R	AHX-AHR-AHV-AHS... M/S – M/1S	AHX... T/S – T/1S	EHY... R/S – R/1S
Cubic capacity (cm³)	1,499	1,997	1,997	1,997
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96	110	110	120
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) on a 10% or 12% gradient	-	1,500-1,450-1,400	1,500-1,380-1,300	1,500-1,300-1,300
Unbraked trailer	-	745-750-750	750	750
Recommended nose weight	-	70	70	70

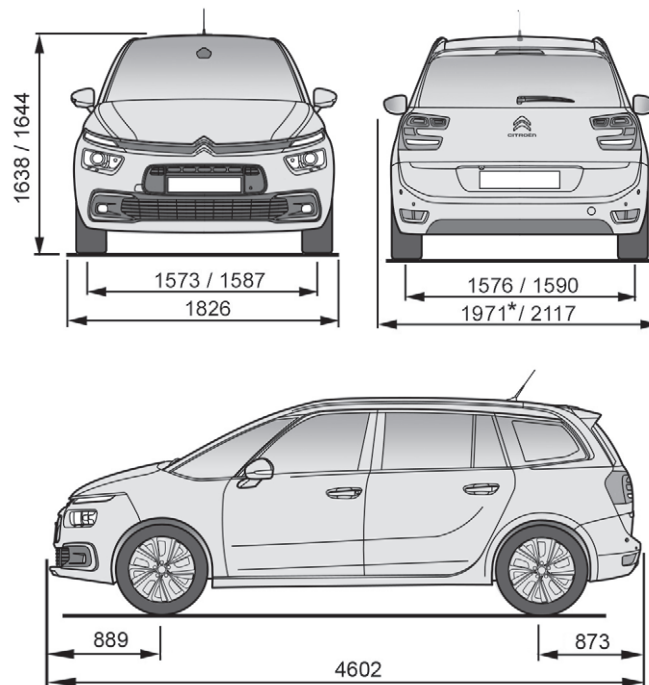
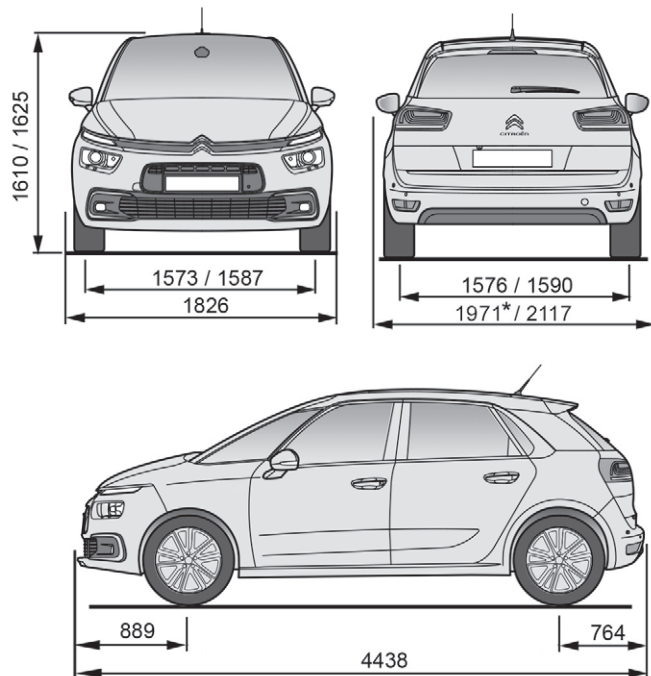
\*\* Euro 6.1 engine

\*\*\* Euro 6.2 engine

.../S: e-HDi model equipped with Stop & Start.  
**3D...** : CITROËN C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).  
**3E...** : CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (5 seats).  
**3A...** : CITROËN Grand C4 SpaceTourer (7 seats).

## Dimensions (in mm)

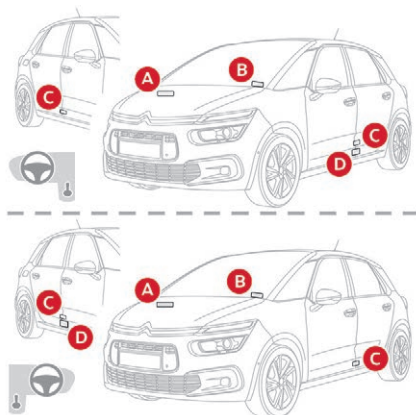
These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.



\* Mirrors folded in.

## Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.



### A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.

This number is engraved on the chassis near the right-hand front wheel arch.

### B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the windscreen lower cross member.

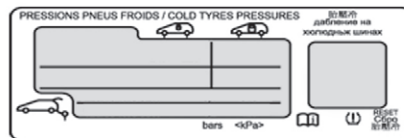
The number is on a label, visible through the windscreen.

### C. Manufacturer's label.

This tamperproof label on the middle door pillar, right or left-hand side, contains the following information:

- the name of the manufacturer,

- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised weight (gross vehicle weight),
- the maximum authorised weight with trailer (gross train weight),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.



### D. Tyre/paint label.

This label on the middle door pillar, driver's side, contains the following information:

- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

**i** The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

## Checking tyre pressures

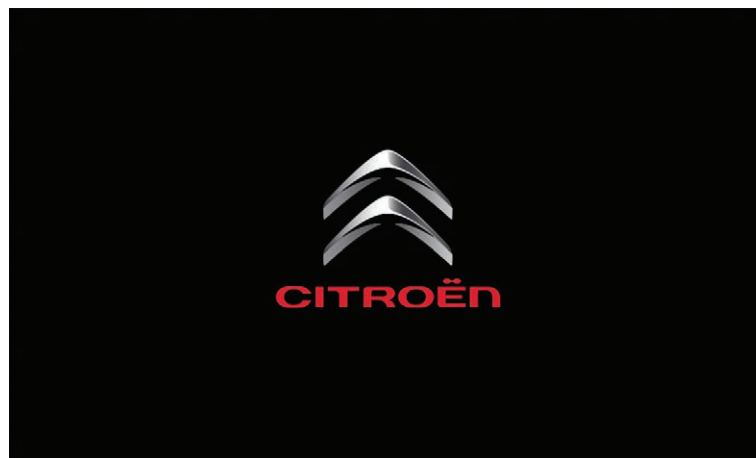
The tyre pressures should be checked when cold at least monthly.

The pressures given on the label are valid for cold tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), the tyres will be warm; in this case 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the pressures given on the label.

**!** Never reduce the pressure of a warm tyre.

**☘** Low tyre pressures increase fuel consumption.

# CITROËN Connect Radio



## Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

### Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	8
Media	9
Telephone	11
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

**i** The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.  
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.  
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.  
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.  
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.  
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

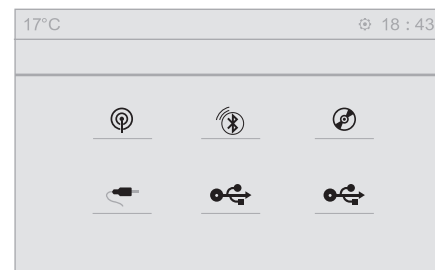
\* Depending on equipment.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

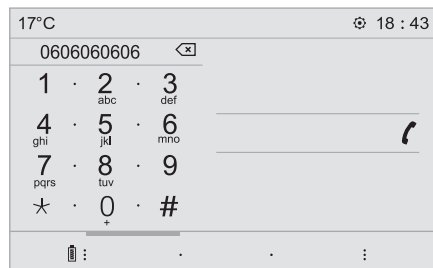
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.

Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB\*/AM\* radio stations.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth\* and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast\* (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes  
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

### Steering mounted controls – Type 1



#### Radio:

Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

#### Media:

Select the previous/next track.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



#### Radio:

Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

#### Media:

Short press: display the list of folders.

Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

## Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Depending on model.



#### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.

or



Mute/Restore the sound.

Or


Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



or



 Decrease volume.

or



**SRC**



or

**SRC**



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): previous/next preset.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

or

**OK**



**Short press**: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

**LIST**

**Radio**: display the list of stations.

**Media**: display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

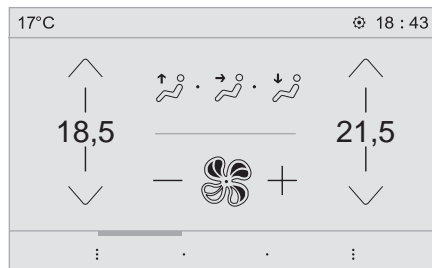
## Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

### Air conditioning



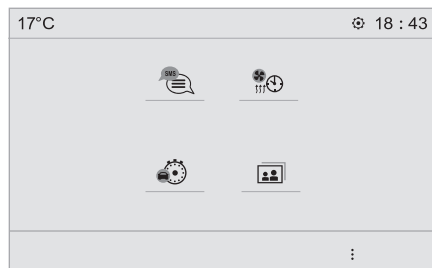
Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



### Applications



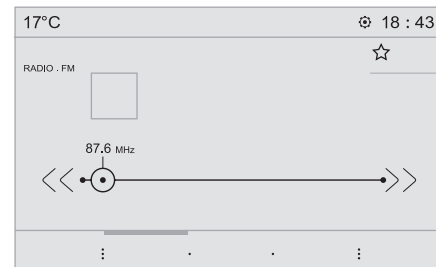
Access configurable equipment.



## Radio Media



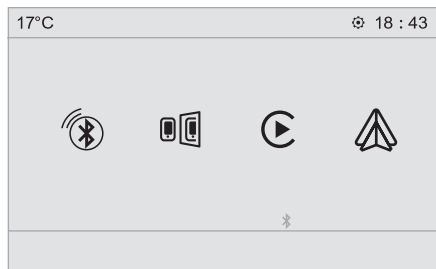
Select an audio source or radio station.



### Telephone



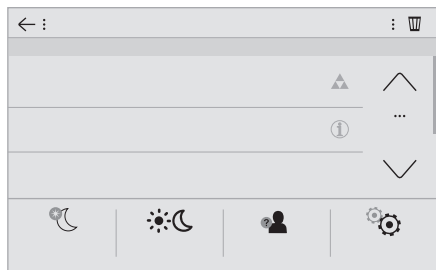
Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



## Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



## Driving



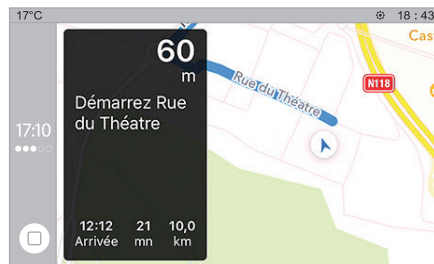
Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



## Navigation



Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



## Applications

### Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp; .png.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "**Photos**".



Select a folder.



Select an image to view.



Press this button to display the details of the photo.



Press the back arrow to go back a level.

## Managing messages



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.



Press "SMS".



Select the "SMS" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.



Press this button to search for a contact.



Select the "Quick messages" tab.



Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

**MHz**  
**KHz**

Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

## Changing waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Band**" to change waveband.



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is filled in, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey area to confirm.

**i** The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Display text information

**i** The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**News**"/"**Info**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Play TA messages



The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Audio settings**".



Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Sound**" tab to configure the audio settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

**I** In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.  
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.  
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

**!** The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

**I** Onboard audio: the Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

**!** Digital radio provides higher quality reception.  
The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Waveband**" to select the "**DAB band**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## FM-DAB Tracking

**I** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.  
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".

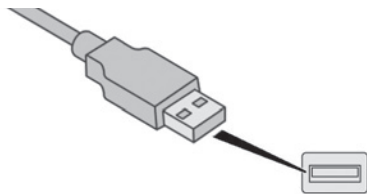


Press in the grey zone to confirm.

**I** If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.  
When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

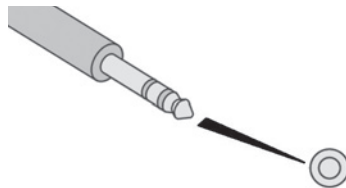
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

**i** The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts); you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice

**!** The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

**!** To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

**i** It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

## Telephone

### MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.  
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

### Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"MirrorLink™"** function.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.  
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

### Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"MirrorLink™"** to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.



On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

## Android Auto smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

### Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **"Android Auto"** function.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® is started on the smartphone

### Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press **"Telephone"** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.



There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone



As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.



To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

## Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

## Automatic reconnection

### To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Internet data"**.



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Press "**End call**".

## Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.  
Park the vehicle.  
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Press "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

**i** It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Setting the ringtone



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.



Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

## Settings

### Profile settings



As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press this button to activate the profile.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0

Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

## Adjust brightness



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press **Brightness**.



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

**!** Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Press the back arrow to confirm.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".



Select "**Animated transitions**".



Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Language**" to change the language.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

## Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

**OK**


Press "**OK**" to save the time.




Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

 Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

 Press the back arrow to save the settings.

**i** The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.



Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.



Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.



Press the back arrow to save the date.



Select the display format of the date.



Press the back arrow again to confirm.

**i** Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.  
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

# CITROËN Connect Nav



## GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents	
First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	3
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	13
Applications	16
Radio	21
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	22
Media	23
Telephone	25
Settings	29
Frequently asked questions	32

**i** The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

**i** The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

## First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.  
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.



Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

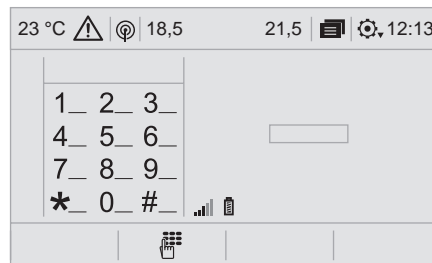
You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.  
Press the cross to go back a level.  
Press "OK" to confirm.

**!** The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.  
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.  
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.  
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

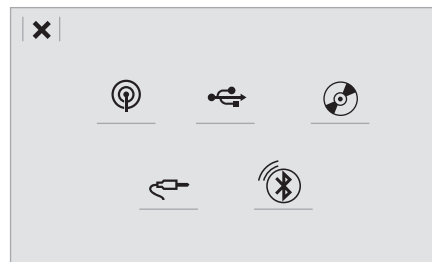
Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:

- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):

- FM/DAB\*/AM\* radios.
- USB memory stick.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast\* (streaming).



\* Depending on equipment.

**i** In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes  
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

Depending on model



### Voice commands:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).

Short press, system voice commands.

Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

**+** Increase volume.

or



**Mute/Restore the sound.**  
Or

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

**-** Decrease volume.

or



or



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.

**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



or



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

**Short press:** confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

## LIST

**Radio:** display the list of stations.

**Media:** display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

## Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

## Air conditioning



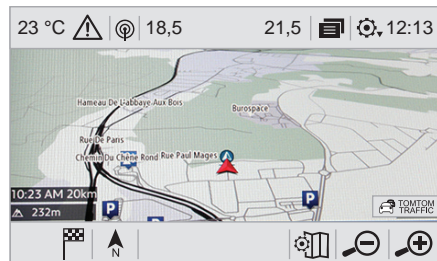
Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



## Connected navigation



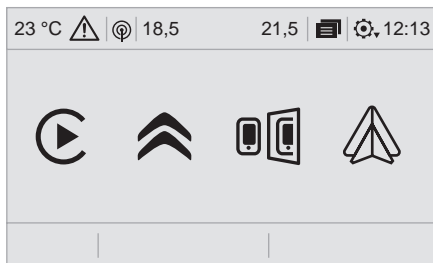
Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.  
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



## Applications



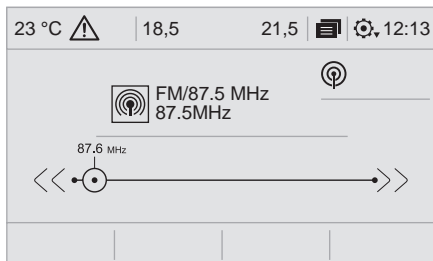
Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.  
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.



## Radio Media



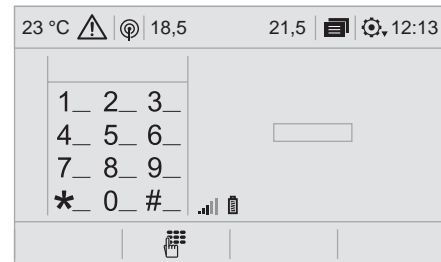
Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.



## Telephone



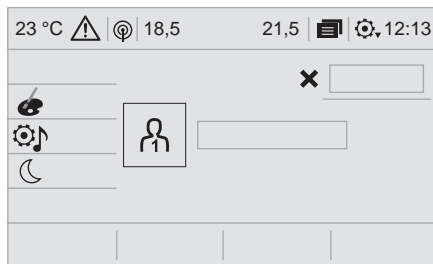
Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.



## Settings



Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



## Vehicle



Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

## DRIVE



## Voice commands

### Steering mounted controls



Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

**!** To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:

- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

## First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

**"Navigate to address, 11 Regent Street, London".**

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

**"Play artist, Madonna".**

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

**"Call David Miller".**



The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...

The voice commands in Arabic for:

"Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city" are not available.



## Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk voice command button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask me to do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.



## Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Help</b>	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
<b>Voice command help</b>	
<b>Navigation help</b>	
<b>Radio help</b>	
<b>Media help</b>	
<b>Telephone help</b>	
<b>Set dialogue mode as &lt;...&gt;</b>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
<b>Select profile &lt;...&gt;</b>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
<b>Yes</b>	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
<b>No</b>	

## "Navigation" voice commands



These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Navigate home</b>	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
<b>Navigate to work</b>	
<b>Navigate to preferred address &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Navigate to contact &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Navigate to address &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Show nearby POI &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Remaining distance</b>	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
<b>Remaining time</b>	
<b>Arrival time</b>	
<b>Stop route guidance</b>	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

## "Radio Media" voice commands

**i** These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Tune to channel &lt;...&gt;</b>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
<b>What's playing</b>	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing".
<b>Play song &lt;...&gt;</b>	Use the command "play" or "listen to" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
<b>Play artist &lt;...&gt;</b>	
<b>Play album &lt;...&gt;</b>	

**i** Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

## "Telephone" voice commands

**i** If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Call contact &lt;...&gt;*</b>	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
<b>Dial &lt;...&gt;*</b>	
<b>Display contacts*</b>	
<b>Display calls*</b>	
<b>Call (message box  voicemail)*</b>	

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

## "Text message" voice commands

- i** If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.  
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

 Voice commands	 Help messages
<b>Send text to &lt;...&gt;</b>	<p>To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.</p> <p>Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".</p>
<b>Listen to most recent message*</b>	

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

- i** The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

## Navigation

### Choice of a destination

#### To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

**i** Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

**i** In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

**i** Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

#### To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

**i** Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

#### To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

## Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Contact"** tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

## Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Points of interest"**.



Select the **"Travel"**, or **"Leisure"** or **"Commercial"** or **"Public"** or **"Geographic"** tab.

Or



Select **"Search"** to enter the name and address of a POI.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to start calculation of the route.

## To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

**i** A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

## Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.  
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.



A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR



Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And



Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

## TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

**i** TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.

The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

**i** The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

## Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

### Network connection provided by the vehicle



OR

### Network connection provided by the user



## Connected navigation connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.

All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.

**Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.**

## Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

## Network connection provided by the user

### USB connection



Connect a USB cable.  
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

### Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

### Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).



#### Restrictions of use:

- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.



The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.

A Connected Services pack:

- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).



The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

## Settings specific to connected navigation



In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



or

**NAV**

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Settings"**.

Select **"Map"**.



Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
- **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**
- **"Authorise sending information"**

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select **"Alerts"**.



Activate or deactivate **"Warn of danger zones"**.



Select this button.



Activate: **Give an audible warning**



For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: **"Authorise sending information"**.



The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

## Declaration of "Danger zones"



To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.



or

NAV



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

Press the **"Declare a new danger zone"** button located in the upper bar of the touch screen



Select the option **"Type"** to choose the type of "danger zone".



Select the **"Speed"** option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press **"OK"** to save and distribute the information.

## "Danger zones" pack updates



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"System settings"**.



Select the **"System info"** tab.



Select **"View"** to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.



Select **"Update(s) due"**.



You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website. The update procedure can also be found on the website.

## Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

**NAV**



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

**i** The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

## Applications

### Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

**i** Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

## Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

## Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.

As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

TEL

Press on **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



or

## APPS

Press **"Connectivity"** to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press **"CarPlay"** to display the CarPlay® interface.

**i** On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

## MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.  
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.

The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The **MirrorLink™** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **MirrorLink™** function.

**OK**

In the process, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Android Auto smartphone connection

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited. All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

**i** Synchronising a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen. The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.

For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

**!** As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

**i** The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

**OK**

During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed. Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

**i** There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

## Bluetooth connection®

**!** As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search"**.  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.



If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.



Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

**i** The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

## Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"** or **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the **"Key"** for the Wi-Fi network and the **"Password"**.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to start the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

## Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/OR

Select the **"Settings"** tab to change the name of the system network and the password.

**OK**

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

## Managing connections



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

**APPS**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Manage connection"**.

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad.

First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

### Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency. (refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

### Activating/Deactivating RDS



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Displaying text information

**i** The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## Playing TA messages

**!** The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

**!** Digital radio provides higher quality reception. The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**



Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

## DAB-FM auto tracking

**i** "DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

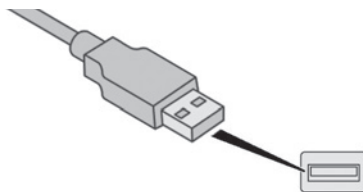
**OK**

Press "**OK**".

**i** If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

**!** If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("DAB-FM" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

## Media USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

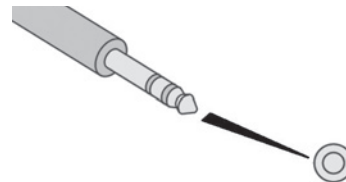
The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

## Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

Operation of controls is via the portable device.

## CD player

(depending on model/depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

**MEDIA**



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

## Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied). Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.



The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

## Information and advice



The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Device management is done by the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.



To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.

The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " " ?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

**i** It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.

If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.

It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.

In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

## Telephone

### Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

**i** Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

**!** To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or



Select "**Search**".  
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

### Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

**i** Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**i** Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

## Automatic reconnection

**i** On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

### To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.



Select one or more profiles.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.



The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.



The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

## Managing paired telephones



This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

## Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

## Making a call



Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.  
Park the vehicle.  
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

**i** It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Select **"Contact"**.



Select **"Create"** to add a new contact.

In the **"Telephone"** tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the **"Address"** tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the **"Email"** tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

**i** The **"Email"** function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

## Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Messages"** to display the list of messages.



Select the **"All"** or **"Sent"** or **"Incoming"** tab.



Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press **"Answer"** to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press **"Call"** to start the call.



Press **"Play"** to hear the message.

**!** Access to **"Messages"** depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system. Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

**i** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

## Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Select **"Quick messages"** to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

## Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

**TEL**

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.



Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

## Settings

### Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.



The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.



The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiances) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**". The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources. Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".



Onboard audio: Arkamys® Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

## Profile settings

**!** As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

### SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.



The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.



Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Balance**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

### SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

**!** Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

## Select the language



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press on this button to define the date.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format of the date.



Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.  
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

## Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

## SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

**OK**Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

**OK**Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

## Colour schemes



As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

**SETUP**Select "**Colour schemes**".Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

## Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	When not navigating, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

## Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.
---	--	---

## Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used is scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

## Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The sound of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

## Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

## A

ABS ..... 103-104  
 Accessories ..... 101  
 Accessory position ..... 131  
 Access to the 3rd row ..... 65  
 Active Safety Brake ..... 21, 165-166, 168  
 AdBlue® ..... 8, 20, 28, 204-205  
 Additive, Diesel ..... 18, 202  
 Adjusting head restraints ..... 59-60  
 Adjusting seats ..... 57-59, 62-64  
 Adjusting the air distribution ..... 72, 74-75  
 Adjusting the air flow ..... 72, 74-75  
 Adjusting the date ..... 39, 18, 31  
 Adjusting the height and reach of  
     the steering wheel ..... 68  
 Adjusting the seat belt height ..... 106  
 Adjusting the temperature ..... 72-73, 75  
 Adjusting the time ..... 39, 17, 31  
 Advice on driving ..... 126-127  
 Airbags ..... 22-23, 109, 111, 113  
 Airbags, curtain ..... 110-111  
 Airbags, front ..... 110-111, 114  
 Airbags, lateral ..... 110-111  
 Air conditioning ..... 6, 73  
 Air conditioning, automatic ..... 71, 75-76  
 Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic ..... 74  
 Air conditioning, manual ..... 71-72  
 Air intake ..... 72, 75-76  
 Air vents ..... 70  
 Alarm ..... 53-54  
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ..... 103-104  
 Anti-pinch ..... 89  
 Anti-theft/Immobiliser ..... 44  
 Apple CarPlay connection ..... 12, 16  
 Armrest, front ..... 62, 79  
 Anti-slip regulation (ASR) ..... 103-104  
 Assistance,  
     emergency braking ..... 103-104, 168  
 Assistance call ..... 102-103  
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) ..... 9, 24

## B

Battery ..... 195, 202, 231, 233-234  
 Battery, charging ..... 232-233  
 Battery, remote control ..... 45-47  
 Black panel ..... 11  
 Black screen ..... 11  
 Blanking screen (snow shield) ..... 193, 197  
 Blind, panoramic sunroof ..... 89  
 Blinds, side ..... 79-80, 84  
 Blind spot detection ..... 24, 174  
 BlueHDi ..... 28, 204, 236  
 Bluetooth (hands-free) ..... 13-14, 25-26  
 Bluetooth (telephone) ..... 13-15, 25-27  
 Bonnet ..... 198  
 Boot ..... 47-48  
 Boot (fittings) ..... 86  
 Boot (opening) ..... 40  
 Bottle holder ..... 79  
 Brake discs ..... 203-204  
 Brake lamps ..... 223-225  
 Brakes ..... 13, 203-204  
 Braking,  
     automatic emergency ..... 21, 165-166, 168  
     Braking, dynamic emergency ..... 131-134  
 Brightness ..... 16  
 Bulbs (changing) ..... 220, 223-225

## C

Cable, audio ..... 9, 23  
 Cable, Jack ..... 9, 23  
 Cap, fuel filler ..... 190  
 Capacity, fuel tank ..... 190  
 Cartridge, fragrance ..... 77-78  
 CD ..... 9, 23-24  
 CD, MP3 ..... 9, 23-24

Central locking ..... 40, 42-43  
 Changing a bulb ..... 220, 223-225  
 Changing a fuse ..... 226-228, 230  
 Changing a wheel ..... 211-216  
 Changing a wiper blade ..... 100, 195-196  
 Changing the remote control battery ..... 46-47  
 Checking the engine oil level ..... 27  
 Checking the levels ..... 199, 201  
 Checking tyre pressures  
     (using the kit) ..... 208-210  
 Checks ..... 199, 202-204  
 Checks, routine ..... 202-204  
 Child lock ..... 124  
 Children ..... 118, 120-121, 123  
 Children (safety) ..... 124  
 Child seats ..... 108, 112-113, 117-118, 124  
 Child seats, conventional ..... 117  
 Child seats, ISOFIX ..... 119-121, 123  
 CITROËN Connect Nav ..... 1  
 CITROËN Connect Radio ..... 1  
 Closing the boot ..... 47-48  
 Closing the doors ..... 40, 42-43  
 Collision Risk Alert ..... 165-167  
 Configuration, vehicle ..... 31-33, 35-36  
 Configurations, seats ..... 67  
 Connection, Bluetooth ..... 13-15, 19, 25-27  
 Connection, MirrorLink ..... 11-12, 17  
 Connection, Wi-Fi network ..... 20  
 Control, back-up boot release ..... 51  
 Control, back-up door release ..... 45-46  
 Control, heated seats ..... 61  
 Control stalk, lighting ..... 90, 92  
 Control stalk, wipers ..... 98-99  
 Courtesy lamps ..... 87-88  
 Cruise control ..... 144, 146, 148-150,  
     157-161, 163, 165  
 Cruise control, adaptive ..... 146, 151-154  
     156-157, 159  
 Cruise control, adaptive with Stop  
     function ..... 146, 157-161, 163

Cruise control by speed limit recognition ..... 146  
Cup holder..... 79

## D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)  
– Digital radio..... 8, 22  
Date (setting)..... 39, 18, 31  
Daytime running lamps..... 93, 220-222  
Deactivating the passenger airbag. 110, 113-114  
Deadlocking ..... 41-42  
Defrosting..... 77  
Defrosting, front ..... 77  
Demisting ..... 77  
Demisting, front..... 77  
Demisting, rear..... 68  
Demisting, rear screen ..... 68  
Dimensions ..... 243  
Dipstick..... 27, 199-200  
Direction indicators..... 92, 220-225  
Display screen, instrument panel ..... 139  
Doors..... 47  
Driver's attention warning..... 175  
Driving economically..... 6  
Driving positions (storing)..... 59  
Dynamic stability control (DSC)..... 21, 103-105

## E

Eco-driving (advice)..... 6  
Economy mode ..... 195

Electronic brake force distribution  
(EBFD)..... 103-104  
Electronic stability control (ESC)..... 103-104  
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) ... 103-104  
Emergency call ..... 102-103  
Emergency switching off..... 128, 130  
Emissions control system, SCR ..... 204  
Energy economy mode..... 195  
Engine, Diesel..... 22, 189, 199, 236, 240  
Engine, petrol..... 189, 199, 238  
Engine compartment ..... 199  
Engines ..... 237-238, 240  
Environment..... 6, 47

## F

Fatigue detection ..... 175  
Filling the AdBlue® tank ..... 205  
Filling the fuel tank..... 189-191  
Filter, air ..... 202  
Filter, oil ..... 202  
Filter, particle ..... 201-202  
Filter, passenger compartment..... 202  
Fitting a wheel..... 217-219  
Fitting roof bars..... 196  
Fittings, boot ..... 86  
Fittings, interior ..... 79  
Fittings, rear ..... 84  
Flap, fuel filler..... 190-191  
Floor, concertina ..... 65-66  
Foglamp, rear..... 24, 223-225  
Foglamps ..... 221  
Foglamps, front..... 91, 96-97, 220, 222, 225  
Foglamps, rear ..... 91  
Folding the rear seats ..... 62-66  
Frequency (radio)..... 21-22

Fuel..... 6, 189  
Fuel consumption..... 6, 38-39  
Fuel tank..... 191  
Fusebox, dashboard ..... 226-228, 230  
Fusebox, engine compartment..... 226-228, 230  
Fuses..... 226-228, 230

## G

Gauge, fuel..... 190  
Gearbox, automatic ..... 134, 136-141, 203  
Gearbox, manual ..... 134-135, 140-141, 203  
Gear lever ..... 6  
Gear lever, manual gearbox ..... 135  
Gear efficiency indicator..... 139  
Glove box ..... 79-80  
G.P.S. .... 12

## H

Hands-free access..... 51-52  
Hands-free tailgate ..... 50-52  
Hazard warning lamps..... 101-102, 208  
Hazard warning lamps,  
automatic operation..... 102  
Headlamp adjustment..... 96  
Headlamps, automatic dipping ..... 25, 94-96  
Headlamps, automatic illumination ..... 90, 93  
Headlamps, dipped beam..... 25, 90, 220-221  
Headlamps, directional ..... 97, 220  
Headlamps, halogen..... 221

Headlamps, main beam ..... 25, 90, 220-222  
 Headlamps, Xenon ..... 220  
 Headlamp wash ..... 100  
 Head restraints, front ..... 59-60  
 Head restraints, rear ..... 63  
 Heating ..... 6, 72  
 Hill start assist ..... 134-135  
 Hooks ..... 85  
 Horn ..... 102

Identification, vehicle ..... 244  
 Ignition ..... 131, 28  
 Ignition on ..... 131  
 Immobiliser, electronic ..... 45, 127  
 Indicator, AdBlue® range ..... 28  
 Indicator, coolant temperature ..... 27  
 Indicator, engine oil level ..... 27  
 Indicators, direction ..... 92  
 Inflating tyres ..... 203  
 Inflating tyres (using the kit) ..... 208-210  
 Instrument panels ..... 8-9  
 Intelligent Traction Control ..... 104  
 Internet browser ..... 16  
 ISOFIX ..... 120-121  
 ISOFIX mountings ..... 119

Jack ..... 211-216, 9, 23  
 Jump starting ..... 231

## K

Key ..... 40-42, 44-46  
 Key, electronic ..... 40-43, 45  
 Keyless Entry and Starting ..... 41-43, 45, 129  
 Key not recognised ..... 128, 130  
 Key with remote control ..... 127  
 Kit, hands-free ..... 13-14, 25-26  
 Kit, temporary puncture repair ..... 208-210

## L

Labels, identification ..... 244  
 Lamps, parking ..... 92  
 Lane Departure Warning System  
 (LDWS) ..... 23, 169, 175  
 LEDs – Light-emitting diodes ..... 220  
 Leg rest, electric ..... 60  
 Level, AdBlue® ..... 201  
 Level, brake fluid ..... 201  
 Level, Diesel additive ..... 201-202  
 Level, engine coolant ..... 27, 201  
 Level, engine oil ..... 27, 199-200  
 Level, headlamp wash ..... 201  
 Level, screenwash fluid ..... 201  
 Levels and checks ..... 199, 201  
 Light-emitting diodes – LEDs ..... 220  
 Lighting ..... 88  
 Lighting, ambient ..... 88  
 Lighting, directional ..... 96-97  
 Lighting, guide-me home ..... 93  
 Lighting, interior ..... 87-88  
 Lighting, welcome ..... 94  
 Loading ..... 6  
 Load reduction mode ..... 195  
 Locating your vehicle ..... 41  
 Locking ..... 44-45  
 Locking from the inside ..... 43-44

## M

Maintenance, routine ..... 6  
 Map reading lamps ..... 88  
 Markings, identification ..... 244  
 Massage function ..... 60  
 Mat ..... 82-83  
 Memorising a speed ..... 144  
 Menu ..... 12  
 Menus (audio) ..... 4-5, 3-5  
 Messages ..... 28  
 Messages, quick ..... 28  
 Mirror, child surveillance ..... 69  
 Mirror, rear view ..... 69  
 Mirrors, door ..... 68-69, 173-174  
 Misfuel prevention ..... 191  
 Modularity, seats ..... 67  
 Motorised tailgate ..... 48-51  
 Mountings, ISOFIX ..... 119

## N

Net ..... 86-87  
 Number plate lamps ..... 226

## O

Obstacle detection .....	176
Oil, engine .....	199-200
Oil change .....	199-200
Oil consumption .....	199-200
Opening the bonnet .....	198
Opening the boot .....	40-41, 47-48
Opening the doors .....	41, 47
Opening the panoramic sunroof blind .....	89

## P

Pads, brake .....	203-204
Paint colour code .....	244
Panoramic glass roof .....	89
Parcel shelf, rear .....	84-85
Park Assist .....	181-182, 185
Parking brake .....	203-204
Parking brake, electric .....	14-17, 21, 131-134
Parking sensors, audible and visual .....	176
Parking sensors, front .....	177
Parking sensors, rear .....	177
Plates, identification .....	244
Player, Apple® .....	10, 24
Player, MP3 CD .....	23
Player, USB .....	9, 23
Port, USB .....	82, 9, 23
Pre-heater, Diesel .....	22
Pressures, tyres .....	203, 211, 219, 244
Pre-tensioning seat belts .....	108
Priming the fuel system .....	236
Profiles .....	16, 30
Protecting children .....	110, 112-114, 118, 120-121, 123-124
Puncture .....	208-214

## R

Radio .....	6, 9, 21, 24
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB) .....	8, 22
Range .....	38-39
Range, AdBlue .....	28-29
RDS .....	7, 21-22
Reading lamps, rear .....	84
Rear screen, demisting .....	77
Recharging the battery .....	232-233
Recirculation, air .....	72, 75-76
Reduction of electrical load .....	195
Regeneration of the particle filter .....	202
Reinitialisation of the under- inflation detection system .....	143
Reinitialising the remote control .....	46-47
Remote control .....	40-45
Removing a wheel .....	217-219
Removing the mat .....	82-83
Replacing bulbs .....	220, 223-225
Replacing fuses .....	226-228, 230
Replacing the air filter .....	202
Replacing the oil filter .....	202
Replacing the passenger compartment filter .....	202
Resetting the service indicator .....	26-27
Resetting the trip recorder .....	30-31
Reversing camera .....	178
Reversing lamp .....	223-225
Roof bars .....	196
Running out of fuel (Diesel) .....	236

## S

Safety, children .....	110, 112-114, 118, 120-121, 123-124
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) .....	202

Scented air freshener .....	77-78
Screen, cold climate .....	197
Screen menu map .....	12
Screenwash, front .....	100
Screenwash, rear .....	99
Seat belts .....	15, 106-108, 117
Seats, electric .....	58-59
Seats, front .....	57-59
Seats, heated .....	61
Seats, rear .....	62-66
Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) .....	204
Selector, gear .....	136-139
Serial number, vehicle .....	244
Service (warning lamp) .....	17
Service indicator .....	26
Servicing .....	26
Settings, equipment .....	31-33, 35-36
Settings, system .....	16, 30
Sidelamps .....	90, 92, 220-225
Side repeater .....	222
Snow chains .....	191-192
Socket, 12 V accessory .....	79, 81, 85
Socket, 230 V .....	81
Socket, auxiliary .....	9, 23
Socket, Jack .....	82, 9, 23
Sockets, audio .....	82
Speed limiter .....	144, 146-148
Speed limit recognition .....	144-145
Spotlamps, door mirror .....	94
Starting a Diesel engine .....	189
Starting the vehicle .....	14-17, 21, 126-130
Starting using another battery .....	130, 231
Station, radio .....	6, 21-22
Stay, bonnet .....	198
Steering mounted controls, audio .....	3, 3
Steering wheel, adjustment .....	68
STOP (warning lamp) .....	13
Stopping the vehicle .....	14-17, 21, 126-130
Stop & Start .....	23-24, 39, 71, 77, 140-141, 190, 198, 202, 234

Storage ..... 80  
 Storage boxes ..... 83-84  
 Storing driving positions ..... 59  
 Sun visor ..... 79-80  
 Sun visor flap ..... 79-80  
 Synchronising the remote control ..... 46-47

## T

Tables of engines ..... 238, 240  
 Tables of fuses ..... 226-228, 230  
 Tailgate ..... 47-50  
 Tank, fuel ..... 190-191  
 Technical data ..... 238, 240  
 Telephone ..... 13-16, 25-29  
 Temperature, coolant ..... 14, 27  
 Three flashes (direction indicators) ..... 92  
 Time (setting) ..... 39, 17, 31  
 TMC (Traffic info) ..... 13  
 Tools ..... 211-216  
 Total distance recorder ..... 30-31  
 Touch screen ..... 31-33, 35-36, 1, 1  
 Towing device ..... 127, 192  
 Towed loads ..... 237  
 Towing another vehicle ..... 234-235  
 Traction control (ASR) ..... 21, 103-105  
 Traffic information (TMC) ..... 13  
 Trailer ..... 127, 192  
 Triangle, warning ..... 208  
 Trip computer ..... 36-39  
 Trip distance recorder ..... 30-31  
 Tyres ..... 6, 203, 244  
 Tyre under-inflation  
     detection ..... 22, 142-143, 211

## U

Under-inflation (detection) ..... 142  
 Unlocking ..... 40-41  
 Unlocking, selective ..... 42  
 Unlocking from the inside ..... 43-44  
 Unlocking the boot ..... 40  
 Unlocking the doors ..... 43-44  
 Updating the date ..... 39, 18, 31  
 Updating the time ..... 39, 17, 31  
 USB ..... 9, 23-24

## V

Ventilation ..... 6, 70-71  
 Visibility ..... 77  
 Vision 360 ..... 179-181  
 Voice commands ..... 5-10

## W

Warning and indicator lamps ..... 11-12  
 Warning lamp, airbag ..... 22-23  
 Warning lamp, braking system ..... 13  
 Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater ..... 22  
 Warning lamp, low fuel level ..... 23  
 Warning lamp, parking brake ..... 14  
 Warning lamp, Service ..... 17  
 Warning lamp, STOP ..... 13  
 Weights ..... 237  
 Wheel, spare ..... 203, 211-216, 244  
 Window controls ..... 55  
 Wiper, rear ..... 99  
 Wiper blades (changing) ..... 100, 195-196







Automobiles CITROËN declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

Printed in the EU  
Anglais

03-18

